



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

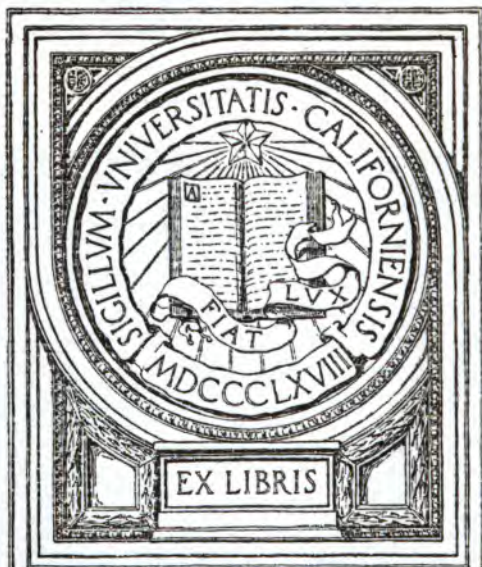
760

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

DEP

IN MEMORIAM
A. F. Lange

No. 40



Education Department

760
M821

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT, HARVARD UNIVERSITY
BERNADOTTE PERRIN, YALE UNIVERSITY
ANDREW FLEMING WEST, PRINCETON UNIVERSITY

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA
TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

A FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

CLIFFORD HERSCHEL MOORE, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

1903

TO ARMY
LIBRARY

COPYRIGHT, 1908, BY

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

Prof A. F. Lange
to Education Dept.

PREFACE

THIS First Latin Book is intended to provide the necessary preparation for the reading of Nepos and Caesar. Whatever objections may be urged against the custom, the fact remains that the majority of schools begin these authors immediately, or very soon, after the first book is completed, and therefore the beginner must be prepared as fully as possible for this reading. To provide this preparation, the 850 words most frequent in Caesar's *Galic War* and Nepos's *Lives* were selected to form the main vocabulary of this book; then, since every art is acquired only by the frequent practice of the same or similar exercise, each word, with few exceptions, has been used eight times or more in the sentences for translation. Although this repetition and the large type chosen to relieve the pupil's eyes may at first glance make the exercises seem long to some teachers, the author holds that the principle of frequent use is of vital importance, and believes that in no other way can an adequate knowledge of the essential vocabulary be acquired. If the exercises here given be done faithfully, the pupil will find on passing to Nepos or Caesar that he is acquainted with all the common words in the senses in which they are used by these authors, and will escape the discouragement incident to the acquisition of a new vocabulary.

Some may miss lists of related words such as are given in many books. Experience, however, shows that such lists have little value compared with those made by the

▼

pupil himself in his note-book. The making of such lists should be steadily encouraged and the lists frequently reviewed. In the vocabularies allied words are regularly given to assist the pupil's memory.

The method of presentation, so far as possible, is the natural one. Sentences are used from the beginning; the unnatural order at first, all inflections with little syntax, then syntax, has been avoided; but the simplest and most familiar constructions of the noun and verb are employed early in connection with the fundamental inflections. The demonstrative pronouns are introduced in Lesson XII; and the simple independent uses of the subjunctive are begun in Lesson XXIX, followed by those dependent constructions which naturally belong with the independent. The introduction of Indirect Discourse in connection with the Subject and Object Infinitive will, it is hoped, free the learner from one of the time-honored terrors of Latin. Throughout, inflections and syntax are gradually developed and fully illustrated. In the treatment of the latter, recourse has constantly been made to points of similarity in Latin and English, and constructions familiar to the learner from his daily speech, as, for example, appositives, predicate nouns and adjectives, subject and object infinitives, have been freely used before they receive formal treatment. As a result of this, the rule is simply the codification of the learner's knowledge rather than the presentation of a new principle. As some teachers prefer to use a grammar with the first book, references have been given under each rule to the Latin grammar of West (W.), Bennett (B.), Allen and Greenough (AG.), and Harkness (H.).

The author hopes that this book will prove interesting as well as useful. To secure this end the subject-matter of the exercises has been considered with care, and in most lessons the sentences taken together tell some

story rather than remain isolated illustrations of inflections and syntax. Passages of connected Latin, fables and stories from Greek and Roman history, are early introduced and used with increasing frequency to the end. These have been drawn and adapted from Livy, Eutropius, Florus, Viri Romae, etc. At the end Caesar's account of his first invasion of Britain is given as possessing unique interest for English-speaking pupils.

Yet while every effort has been made to give the necessary elementary knowledge in a simple and interesting manner, care has been taken not to avoid or to slur over the real difficulties of beginning Latin. The author has no sympathy with the notion, now fortunately disappearing, that a study must be made easy to escape being dull. A knowledge of Latin, like that of every other subject, can only be acquired by hard work; and the author's own experience in teaching the elements of Latin has convinced him that nothing contributes so certainly to an interest in the subject as hard study and the mastery of each principle as it is met. Real acquisition is a delight, and nothing has done so much to create a distaste for Latin or caused so many to drop the language at the end of the first year as careless work in the beginning and the useless half-knowledge resulting therefrom. Inflections and rules should be *learned*, and the exercises should be mastered. If this be done throughout the study of this book, the pupil will find a genuine interest in Nepos and Caesar.

Finally, no attempt has here been made to supplant the intelligent teacher. The printed word can never be so potent as the living voice, and each topic can be advantageously illustrated by the instructor.

The author wishes to thank Prof. A. F. West for permission to make free use of the excellent statements employed in his Latin Grammar in the TWENTIETH CENTURY SERIES; to express his obligation for invaluable aid

of every kind to Dr. J. W. H. Walden, of Cambridge; to Dr. J. W. Hewitt, Master in Worcester Academy, and to Mr. Peterssen of the Harvard Graduate School for their kind assistance in proof-reading; and especially to Prof. Charles H. Forbes, of Phillips Academy, Andover, for his help at many points where his large experience has been of great service.

All suggestions and corrections will be gratefully received.

C. H. M.

CAMBRIDGE, MASS., *August 15, 1903.*

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGES
INTRODUCTION	1-6
I. FIRST DECLENSION.—Nominative and Accusative Singular and Plural. Subject. Object . . .	7-9
II. FIRST DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Possessive Genitive. Dative of the Indirect Object	9-12
III. FIRST DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Predicate Nominative. Dative of Possessor	12-14
IV. SECOND DECLENSION.—Appositives. Ablative of Place.	14-17
V. SECOND DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Agreement of Ad- jectives. Predicate of Adjectives	17-20
VI. SECOND DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Ablative of Accom- paniment	21-23
VII. THE VERB <i>sum</i> . Present system in the Indicative and Infinitive. Agreement of Verbs. Adjectives in -er	24-26
VIII. FIRST CONJUGATION.—Active Voice: Present System in the Indicative and Infinitive	27-29
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Retort Truthful</i>	29-30
IX. FIRST CONJUGATION (<i>continued</i>).—Passive Voice; Pres- ent System in the Indicative and Infinitive. Ab- lative of Agent	30-32
X. THE VERB <i>sum</i> . Perfect System in the Indicative and Infinitive. Ablative of Means or Instrument .	33-35
XI. FIRST CONJUGATION (<i>continued</i>).—Perfect System of <i>amō</i> in the Indicative and Infinitive, Active and Passive. Ablative of Cause	36-39
XII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>hic</i> AND <i>ille</i>	39-42
XIII. THE RELATIVE <i>quī</i> . Agreement of the Relative Pro- noun	43-45
XIV. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <i>is</i> : THE INTERROGATIVE <i>quis</i> .	46-49

LESSON	PAGES
XV. THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Mute Stems . . .	49-52
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Early Kings of Rome</i> . . .	52
XVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Mute Stems (<i>continued</i>). —Ablative of Manner	53-56
XVII. THE THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems. Objective Genitive . . .	56-60
XVIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Stems in -i . . .	60-64
XIX. THE THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Mixed Stems	64-67
XX. THE THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Rules for Gender. Accusative and Ablative of Time . . .	67-70
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Beginning of the Republic</i>	70-71
XXI. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION . . .	71-74
XXII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—Declension of Comparatives. Ablative of Comparison . . .	74-77
XXIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>).—Adjectives in -er and -ills. Ablative of Degree of Difference	78-80
XXIV. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>).—Irregular Comparison. Ablative of Separation . . .	81-84
XXV. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . .	84-87
READING EXERCISE: <i>Wars with the Gauls</i> . . .	87-88
XXVI. FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS	89-92
XXVII. SECOND CONJUGATION.—The Indicative entire and the Present Infinitive of <i>habēō</i> , active and passive	92-94
XXVIII. THE GENITIVE AND THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY . . .	95-97
XXIX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.—Present System of the Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> , <i>amō</i> , and <i>habēō</i> . Volitive Subjunctive. Optative Subjunctive	97-101
XXX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.—Purpose and Result Clauses	101-104
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Persian Wars</i> . . .	105
XXXI. THIRD CONJUGATION. Present System of <i>regō</i> in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive, Active and Passive. Substantive Clauses of Purpose	106-109
XXXII. THIRD CONJUGATION (<i>continued</i>).—Perfect System of <i>regō</i> in the Indicative, Active and Passive	109-111

LESSON	PAGES
XXXIII. THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -iō).—The Indicative entire, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive of capīō , Active and Passive. Substantive Clauses of Result. Clauses introduced by quīn	111-115
XXXIV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—The Indicative entire, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive of audiō , Active and Passive	115-117
XXXV. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—Relative Clauses of Purpose and of Characteristic	117-121
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battle of Marathon</i>	121-122
XXXVI. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.—Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing	122-124
XXXVII. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — Semi-Deponent Verbs. Ablative with Deponents	125-127
XXXVIII. THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE	128-130
XXXIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	131-134
XL. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	134-137
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis</i>	137-139
XLI. THE INFINITIVE.—Subject and Object Infinitives. Indirect Discourse	139-143
XLII. INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>).—Indirect Questions. Conditions in Indirect Discourse	143-146
READING EXERCISE: <i>Roman History from 60 B. C.</i>	147-148
XLIII. THE COMPOUNDS OF sum .—Dative with Compounds	148-150
XLIV. Volō, nōlō, mālō	150-152
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Beginning of Civil War</i>	153-154
XLV. COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS	154-156
XLVI. Eō and fīō	157-158
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Civil Wars (continued)</i>	159-160
XLVII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—Clauses introduced by antequam and priusquam ; by dum	160-164

LESSON		PAGES
XLVIII.	CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY <i>cum</i>	164-167
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Assassination of Caesar</i>	167-168
XLIX.	CAUSE AND CONCESSION	169-171
L.	PARTICIPLES.—Ablative Absolute	172-175
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Destruction of the Conspirators</i>	176-177
LI.	THE VERB <i>ferō</i>	177-179
LII.	REVIEW OF PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.	179-181
	READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battle of Actium and the End of the Civil Wars</i>	181-183
LIII.	REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE	183-187
LIV.	REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE	187-191
	READING EXERCISE: <i>Octavian's Triumph and Rule</i>	191-193
LV.	PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS	193-195
LVI.	GERUND AND SUPINE	196-199
LVII.	NUMERALS	199-200
	CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN	201-215
	APPENDIX.—Declensions and Conjugations	217-258
	LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	259-285
	ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	286-298

FIRST LATIN BOOK

INTRODUCTION

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

1 THE Latin language is so named because it was first spoken by the ancient Latin tribe which inhabited the neighborhood of Rome. It gradually spread until it became the principal language of the Roman Empire, which once covered the whole western civilized world. It lasted as the common spoken language well into the Middle Ages, and as the universal language of scholars until about the middle of the eighteenth century. Some books are still written in Latin, and some scholars speak it. It is also used in our time as the language of the Roman Catholic Church.

2 Latin is the parent of those modern languages which are known as Romance languages—such as French, Italian, and Spanish. About one-half of all our English words are borrowed from foreign languages, and four-fifths of these borrowed words come either directly or indirectly from Latin.

Alphabet

3 The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*.

4 **U** as the vowel form of **V** was not invented until the Middle Ages, but for convenience both forms are generally used. **K** is found only in *Kalendae, Calends, the first of the month*, and a very few other words. **Q** is always followed by **u** as in English. **Y** and **Z** were introduced about 50 B. C. to represent the sounds of the corresponding Greek letters, and are found only in foreign words.

5 The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The diphthongs are **ae, oe, au, eu, ei, ui**.

6 The consonants are all other letters. They are divided into

Mutes (stopped sounds) **p, b, t, d, c, k, q, g**.

Liquids . . . **l, m, n, r**.

Sibilant . . . **s**.

Double consonants . **x = cs** or **ga, z = ds**.

Pronunciation

7

VOWELS

The mark - over a vowel means that it is *long*, and ˘ that it is *short*.

ā as the last *a* of *aha'*.

ǣ as the first *a* of *aha!*

ē as in *whey*.

ǿ as in *whet*.

ī as in *pique*.

ĩ as in *pick*.

ō as in *omen*.

ǒ as in *omit*.

ū as *oo* in *pool*.

ũ as in *put*.

ȳ ȳ like the German *ü* or the French *u*.

8

DIPHTHONGS

ae as *ai* in *aisle*.

eu as *eu* in *feud*.

oe as *oi* in *oil*.

ei as *ei* in *feint*.

au as *ow* in *owl*.

ui as *we*.

- 9 The sounds of *ei*, *ui*, *eu*, will be more accurately reproduced if the English words are somewhat drawled, so that the component vowels may be heard more distinctly, e. g., *fee-int*.

10 CONSONANTS

Consonants are sounded as in English, except that

- c** and **g** are always hard, as in *cat*, *get*.
- i** consonant is always like *y* in *yet*.
- s** is always sharp, as in *sun*, *sea*.
- t** is always sounded as in *time*.
- v** is always like *w* in *wine*.
- x** is like *ks*.
- z** is like *dz* in *adze*.
- bs** is like *ps*.
- bt** is like *pt*.
- ch** is like *k*.

Doubled consonants, like **ll**, **nn**, **tt**, must be sounded separately: *ille*, *án-nus*, *mit-tō*. Compare the English *book-case*, *rat-trap*.

Syllables

- 11 A Latin word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs: *au-rum*, *gold*; *a-mā-vit*, *he loved*; *for-ti-tū-dō*, *bravery*.
- 12 In dividing words into syllables:
- (a) A single consonant is attached to the following vowel: *lē-gā-tus*, *ambassador*.
 - (b) When two or more consonants stand together, as many are usually attached to the following vowel as can begin a word: *for-tis*, *brave*; *prō-vín-ci-a*, *province*; *cō-gnō-scō*, *I recognize*.
 - (c) But compound words are divided into their component parts: *ád-sum*, *I am present*.

Quantity of Vowels

- 13 Vowels are either *long* (marked -) or *short* (marked ˘).

In this book all long vowels are marked ; all vowels not marked may be regarded as short.

- 14 A vowel is regularly short before a vowel or h : *mēus, mine ; nīhil, nothing.*

(a) A few exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek : *Aenēas.*

- 15 It will be useful to remember that, with a few exceptions which will be marked, a vowel before *nt* or *nd* is short.

- 16 Diphthongs, vowels formed from diphthongs, and vowels due to contraction are long : *cāſa, reason ; inīquus (in + aequus), unfair ; cōgō (cō + agō), compel.*

Also a vowel before *i* consonant, *nf*, *ns*, and often before *gn*, is long : *ēius, of him, his ; infāns, child ; mēnsa, table ; régnum, kingdom.*

Quantity of Syllables

- 17 A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is also long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by a double consonant : *ex, from ; mors, death.*

It is important to remember that it is the *syllable*, not the vowel, which is long by position. Thus the last *syllable* of *amant* is long by position, owing to the time required to pronounce the consonants *nt*, but the *vowel a* is short.

Accent

- 18 The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult, the *antepenult*.
- 19 Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: *pá-ter*, *má-ter*.
- 20 Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long: *Rō-mā-nus*. Otherwise they are accented on the antepenult: *tá-bu-la*, *table*; *ma-ri-ti-mus*, *maritime*.
- 21 A few monosyllables, called enclitics because they are closely joined to the preceding words, always throw an accent upon the syllable before them, even if that syllable be short. The most common enclitics are *-ne*, a sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*: *auditne*, *does he hear?* *rosâque*, *and a rose*.

22

Exercise for Pronunciation

In faucibus lupi os inhaeserat. Mercēde
In the throat of a wolf a bone had stuck. For pay
 igitur conducit gruem, qui illud extrahat. Hōc
therefore he hired a crane who it was to take out. This
 grūs longitūdine colli facile effecit. Cum
the crane because of the length of his neck easily did. When,
 autem mercēdem postulāret, subridēns lupus et
however, his pay he asked for, smiling the wolf and
 dentibus infrendēns, "Num tibi," inquit, "parva mercēs
his teeth gnashing, "Does it to you," said he, "small pay
 vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupi faucibus
seem that your head unharmed from a wolf's throat
 extrāxisti?"
you have got out?"

- 23 The Latin language has the same parts of speech as the English, and the same grammatical terms—*case, number, mood, tense, voice, declension*, etc.—are for the most part used in both English and Latin grammar.

Cases

- 24 The cases in Latin are the *nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative*. These are partially distinguished by different forms, as will be explained later. There are also a few nouns which have a *locative* case, but this case had been nearly lost before the Romans developed a literature. The meanings of the cases will be shown in the following lessons.

Gender

- 25 There are three genders in Latin, as in English; but the gender of a Latin noun is more often determined by its ending than by its meaning. Special rules for gender will be given for each class of nouns; but the following general rules are useful:

(a) *Masculine* are names of males, also names of rivers, winds, and months: **pater**, *father*; **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **Rhēnus**, *Rhine*; **Eurus**, *east wind*; **Martius**, *March*.

(b) *Feminine* are names of females, also names of countries, islands, towns, and trees: **māter**, *mother*; **Tullia**, *Tullia*; **Eurōpa**, *Europe*; **Sicilia**, *Sicily*; **quercus**, *oak*.

LESSON I

FIRST OR -ā DECLENSION

26

Stem in ā¹

THE Gender is *Feminine*, except of nouns which denote males (25 a).

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL

27

EXAMPLES

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	{ <i>fābula</i> , <i>story</i> . <i>rosa</i> , <i>rose</i> .	<i>fābulae</i> , <i>stories</i> . <i>rosae</i> , <i>roses</i> .
ACCUSATIVE	{ <i>fābulam</i> , <i>story</i> . <i>rosam</i> , <i>rose</i> .	<i>fābulās</i> , <i>stories</i> . <i>rosās</i> , <i>roses</i> .

(a) Notice how the Latin plural is distinguished from the singular, and that, while in English the nominative and accusative (i. e. objective) have the same form, in Latin the endings differ.

Form the accusative singular, the nominative and accusative plural of *puella*, *girl*; *via*, *road*; *parva*, *small*; *māgna*, *large*.

¹ The Stem is the body of the word to which the endings are attached. The term is used here for convenience, but the changes of stems in forming the cases are too complicated for the beginner to attempt to understand.

28

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

ancilla, *f. maid-servant.***fābula**, *f. story, tale.***Iūlia**, *f. Julia.***puella**, *f. girl.***rosa**, *f. rose.***Tullia**, *f. Tullia.***via**, *f. road.*

PARTICLES

-ne, a sign of a question
(21).**et**, *and.*

ADJECTIVES

bona, *f. good.***lāta**, *f. wide, broad.***longa**, *f. long.***māgna**, *f. large.***parva**, *f. small, little.*

VERBS

est, (*he, she, it*) *is.***sunt**, (*they*) *are.***amat**, (*he, she, it*) *loves,*
*likes.***amant**, (*they*) *love, like.*

29

EXAMPLES

1. **Puella est parva.***The girl is small.*2. **Viae sunt longae.***The roads are long.*3. **Iūlia amat parvam puellam.***Julia loves the little girl.*4. **Amantne puellae rosās?***Do the girls like roses?*

(a) Notice that in Latin there is no article: we may translate **puella**, *girl, a girl, the girl*, as the situation requires. The fourth example above might have been translated, *Do girls like the roses?*

(b) Notice also that the adjectives agree with their nouns in *gender, number, and case*, as in English.

30

Rule.—The Subject of a finite¹ verb is in the Nominative.

31

Rule.—The Direct Object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative.

W. 289, 308; B. 166, 172; AG. 173, 237; H. 387, 404.

32

1. **Fābula est longa.** 2. **Lāta est via.** 3. **Longa via est lāta.** 4. **Iūlia est puella.** 5. **Parva puella est Tullia.**

¹ That is, in any mood except the infinitive.

6. Iūlia amat magnās rosās. 7. Amatne Iūlia longās fābulās? 8. Parvae puellae fābulās amant. 9. Iūlia est ancilla. 10. Estne¹ bona ancilla? 11. Tullia et Iūlia sunt bonae ancillae. 12. Ancillae parvam puellam amant.

- 33 1. The road is long. 2. The wide road is long. 3. Girls like roses. 4. Does Julia like roses? 5. Julia likes large roses. 6. Are Julia and Tullia little girls? 7. They are maid-servants. 8. Is the story good? 9. It is good and long.

LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

34

PARADIGM

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc. ²	rosa, <i>a rose.</i>	rosae, <i>roses.</i>
GEN.	rosae, <i>of a rose.</i>	rosārum, <i>of roses.</i>
DAT.	rosae, <i>to a rose.</i>	rosis, <i>to roses.</i>
ACCU.	rosam, <i>a rose.</i>	rosās, <i>roses.</i>
ABL.	rosā, <i>with³ a rose.</i>	rosis, <i>with roses.</i>

(a) The terminations, printed above in full-faced type, represent the case-endings combined with the stem; but in some forms no case-ending appears.

(b) Notice what cases are alike in the paradigm. Make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

¹ Notice that the number of the subject is shown by the verb-ending.

² The vocative is the case of address; in most nouns it is the same as the nominative.

³ This translation of the ablative is only one of a number possible; the various meanings will be given later.

POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

35

EXAMPLES

1. *Rosa puellae est alba.* *The girl's rose is white.*
2. *Ancilla Tulliae est bona.* *Tullia's maid is good.*

(a) Notice that the genitives *puellae* and *Tulliae* tell the persons who possess the rose and the maid-servant. Such a genitive is called a *Possessive Genitive*.

36

Rule.—The Genitive is used to denote the Possessor.

W. 353; B. 198; AG. 214, a. I; H. 440, 1.

DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

37

EXAMPLES

1. *Iūlia rosam ancillae dat.* *Julia gives the maid a rose.*
2. *Tullia fabulam puellis narrat.* *Tullia tells the girls a story.*

(a) Notice that the datives *ancillae* and *puellis* tell the persons to whom something is given or told. Such a dative, denoting the person toward whom the action of the verb is directed, is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object*. It may often be translated by the English Objective case with *to* or *for*.

38

Rule.—The Indirect Object of a verb is in the Dative case.

W. 326; B. 187; AG. 224; H. 424.

39

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

cūra, f. *care*.
epistula, f. *letter*.
filia,¹ f. *daughter*.
patria, f. *fatherland*.
rēgina, f. *queen*.
silva, f. *wood, forest*.

ADJECTIVES

cāra, f. *dear, beloved*.
mala, f. *bad, wicked*.
multa, f. *much, many*.
nova, f. *new*.
pulchra, f. *beautiful, pretty*.

¹ Dative and ablative plural *filīā-bus*.

sed, conj. *but*.nōn, adv. *not*.

VERBS

dat, (*he, she, it*) *gives*.narrant, (*they*) *tell*.dant, (*they*) *give*.habet, (*he, she, it*) *has*.narrat, (*he, she, it*) *tells*.habent, (*they*) *have*.

- 40 1. Tullia est rēginae filia. 2. Rēgina novam fābulam filiae narrat. 3. Rēgina habet pulchrās filiās. 4. Rēginae filiābus (dat.) pulchram fābulam narrat. 5. Parvae puellae (nom.) rosās multās rēginae dant. 6. Rēgina amat patriam. 7. Patria rēginae (dat.) cāra est. 8. Rēgina est bona et patriam amat. 9. Rēgina filiae epistulam dat. 10. Suntne viae patriae longae? 11. Sunt longae sed nōn lātae. 12. Silva pulchra est lāta. 13. Rēginae bonae multam cūram habent. 14. Mala ancilla est māgna cūra.

- 41 Notice how the order of the preceding sentences differs from that in English. Latin being an inflected language, that is, having different forms to express the relation of words, admits of greater freedom in the arrangement of a sentence than ours. For example, if some one should say in English, *The queen the girl loves*, we should not know whether *queen* was subject or object; but in the Latin **Rēgina puellam amat**, the case-endings make the construction clear. Study the following sentences:

1. **Rēgina parvam puellam amat.** *The QUEEN (in contrast to the king, or any one else) loves the little girl.*

2. **Parvam puellam amat rēgina.** *It is the LITTLE GIRL (not some one else) the queen loves.*

3. **Amatne rēgina parvam puellam?** *Does the queen LOVE the little girl?*

The following general principles should be remembered:

(a) In a Latin sentence the subject, as the most important part, is ordinarily placed first; then the object

follows, as the next most important part; the indirect object, if any, follows; and the verb comes at the end, except such unimportant forms as *est*, *sunt*, and other parts of the Latin verb 'to be,' which may generally be placed in any convenient part of the sentence.

(b) Adjectives usually precede their nouns.

(c) If a word is to be made emphatic, it is ordinarily put first in the sentence.

42 With these principles in mind translate the following sentences, and see the varying meaning you can give by changing the position of the Latin words. Remember the Latin order is significant; it is never a matter of chance.

1. Tullia's letter is long. 2. The maid gives the letter to the queen. 3. The queen's daughter is not beautiful, but (she is)¹ dear. 4. The maid is telling Julia a new story. 5. Julia is a little girl, but she loves long stories. 6. Large forests are beautiful. 7. A good² queen loves her country, but a bad² queen does not.

LESSON III

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

43

EXAMPLES

1. **Alexandra est rēgina.** *Alexandra is the queen.*
2. **Tullia et Iūlia sunt par-** *Tullia and Julia are little*
 vae puellae. *girls.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the nominatives **rēgina**, **puellae**, are in the predicates, and mean the same

¹ Omit.

² Express emphasis by the order.

as the subjects **Alexandra** and **Tullia et Iūlia**. Such nouns as **rēgina** and **puella** are called *Predicate Nouns*.

(b) Notice that nouns were used in this way in sentences 4, 5, 9, 10, and 11 of Lesson I, and sentences 1 and 14 of Lesson II.

- 44 **Rule.**—A Predicate noun agrees with its subject in case.
W. 290; B. 168; AG. 185; H. 393.

DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

45 EXAMPLES

1. **Bona ancilla est Iūliae** (dative). *Julia has a good maid.*
2. **Rosae sunt puellis** (dative). *The girls have roses.*

(a) Notice that the datives **Iūliae** and **puellis** are used in the predicate with **est** and **sunt** to tell the persons to whom **ancilla** and **rosae** belong, and that the meaning is the same as **Iūlia bonam ancillam habet**, **Puellae rosas habent**. Such a dative is called the *Dative of Possessor*. The thing possessed is the subject of the verb.

- 46 **Rule.**—The Dative is used with *est*, and other forms of the Latin verb meaning “to be,” to denote the Possessor.
W. 340; B. 190; AG. 231; H. 430.

47 VOCABULARY

NOUNS

āra , f. <i>altar</i> .	Graecia , f. <i>Greece</i> .
Britannia , f. <i>Britain, England</i> .	Ītalia , f. <i>Italy</i> .
dea , ¹ f. <i>goddess</i> .	nauta , m. <i>sailor</i> .
fāma , f. <i>fame, reputation</i> .	poēta , m. <i>poet</i> .
	vīta , f. <i>life</i> .

ADJECTIVES

clāra , f. <i>renowned, famous</i> .	mea , f. <i>my</i> .
grāta , f. <i>pleasing, acceptable</i> .	tua , f. <i>your</i> (singular).

¹ **Dea** forms the dative and ablative plural like **filia** (39).

VERBS

laudat, (*he, etc.*) *praises.*habitat, (*he, etc.*) *lives, dwells.*laudant, (*they*) *praise.*habitant, (*they*) *live, dwell.*

ADVERBS

ibi, *there.*ubi, *where* (relative and interrogative).

- 48 1. Graecia est mea patria, Italia est patria Tulliae.
 2. Deae habent multās ārās. 3. Deābus sunt multae ārae.
 4. Ubi¹ sunt ārae deārum? 5. Laudatne poēta deam?
 6. Poēta, māgna est tua fāma. 7. Longa vīta nōn est nautae.
 8. Vīta rēgīnae est longa. 9. Rēgīna multās filiās habet.
 10. Rēgīnae (dat.) sunt multae filiae. 11. Fāma est poētae grāta.
 12. Clāra est poētae fāma. 13. Italia est patria nautae, sed ibi nōn habitat.
- 49 1. The poet loves great fame. 2. Altars are acceptable to the goddesses. 3. England is the sailor's native land and he lives there. 4. Poets love and praise their native land. 5. The queen has a beautiful daughter.² 6. Do the broad forests belong to the queen?² 7. My daughter, your letter is not long.

LESSON IV

SECOND OR -o DECLENSION

Stem in o

- 50 THE Gender of nouns of the Second Declension ending in -us in the nominative is usually *Masculine*.

¹ As *ubi* is itself an interrogative particle, -ne is not needed.

² In how many ways can this be translated?

51

PARADIGM
Servus, slave.
servo-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.	servus, serve	servī
GEN.	servī	servōrum
DAT.	servō	servīs
ACCU.	servum	servōs
ABL.	servō	servīs

(a) The vocative singular of such nouns ends in *-e*. In all other nouns and in all plurals it is the same as the nominative.

(b) Notice what cases have the same terminations; make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

(c) All the feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have corresponding masculine forms in *-us* declined like *servus*: *bonus, cārus, clārus, longus, māgnus, parvus*, etc.

(d) Decline together, *bonus amicus, lātus campus*.

APPOSITIVES

52

EXAMPLES

1. *Dea Vesta āram habet.* *The goddess, Vesta, has an altar.*
2. *Iūliae puellae rosam dat ancilla.* *The maid gives a rose to the girl Julia.*

(a) Notice that *Vesta* is in the same case as *dea*, and explains what goddess is meant; that *Iūliae* bears the same relation to *puellae*. Such a noun explaining another noun referring to the same person or thing is called an *Appositive*, as in English.

53

Rule.—An Appositive agrees with its subject in case.
 W. 291; B. 169, 2; AG. 184; H. 393.

Decline together *dea Vesta, Marcus dominus*.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE

54

EXAMPLES

1. **Amicus est in hortō.** *A friend is in the garden.*
 2. **Dea āram in campō habet.** *The goddess has an altar in the plain.*

(a) Notice that in *hortō*, in *campō* answer the question *Where?* Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of the Place Where*.

55 **Rule.**—The Place Where is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition.

W. 401; B. 228; AG. 258, c; H. 483.

56

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

- | | |
|---|---|
| agricola , -ae, m. <i>farmer</i> . | servus , -i, m. <i>slave</i> . |
| amicus , -i, m. <i>friend</i> . | terra , -ae, f. <i>land, earth,</i> |
| campus , -i, m. <i>plain, field.</i> | <i>ground.</i> |
| dominus , -i, m. <i>master, owner.</i> | Vesta , -ae, f. <i>Vesta (a goddess).</i> |
| hortus , -i, m. <i>garden.</i> | vilicus , i, m. <i>steward, superintendent of an estate.</i> |
| Marcus , -i, m. <i>Marcus.</i> | villa , -ae, f. <i>country house,</i> |
| ōceanus , -i, m. <i>ocean.</i> | <i>farm.</i> |
| Quintus , -i, m. <i>Quintus.</i> | |

VERBS

- | | |
|---|---|
| cūrat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>cares for, takes care of.</i> | errant , (<i>they</i>) <i>wander, stray about.</i> |
| cūrant , (<i>they</i>) <i>care for, take care of.</i> | labōrat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>works.</i> |
| errat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>wanders, strays about.</i> | labōrant , (<i>they</i>) <i>work.</i> |
| | nāvigat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>sails.</i> |
| | nāvigant , (<i>they</i>) <i>sail.</i> |

in, preposition with abl., *in*. **itaque**, conj., *therefore*.

- 57 1. **Āra deae Vestae est in silvā.** 2. **Deae grāta est rosa.** 3. **Itaque Marcus multās rosās deae dat.** 4. **Marcus est agricola et amicus Quīnti.** 5. **Quīntō sunt lāti campi**

et māgnus hortus. 6. Habet villam et multōs servōs. 7. Servi labōrant in campis dominī. 8. Quīntus in terrā nōn habitat, sed ōceanum nāvigat. 9. Marcus est Quīnti vilicus. 10. Itaque Marcus hortum et villam mei amīci Quīnti cūrat. 11. Amīce Quīnte, Marcus est bonus vilicus. 12. Iūlia et Tullia, filiae dominī, ibi errant, ubi sunt multae et pulchrae rosae.

- 58 1. The steward's reputation is good. 2. Marcus, the owner of the country house, has a new steward.¹ 3. Where are the new slaves working? 4. They are working in your garden, but the maids are working in my country house. 5. The ocean is dear to the sailor, but the farmer praises the land. 6. Julia, where are your beautiful roses? 7. My roses are on (in) the altar of the goddess. 8. Poets praise the famous forests of Italy, where the goddess has many altars.¹

LESSON V

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS

- 59 THE Gender of all nouns of the Second Declension ending in *-um* is *Neuter*.

60

PARADIGM

Dōnum, gift.**dono-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	dōnum	dōna
GEN.	dōnī	dōnōrum
DAT.	dōnō	dōnīs
ACCU.	dōnum	dōna
ABL.	dōnō	dōnīs

¹ Translate the sentence in two ways.

(a) Notice that the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative have the same form. This is true of all neuters.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

61 The masculine and feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have neuter forms in -um: bonum, cārum, clārum, longum, māgnum, parvum, etc. These are declined like dōnum.

The full declension of these adjectives is shown thus :

62

thus :

SINGULAR				
	MASC.		FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	bonus, bone		bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī		bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō		bonae	bonō
ACCU.	bonum		bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō		bonā	bonō
PLURAL				
NOM., Voc.	bonī		bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum		bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonis		bonis	bonis
ACCU.	bonōs		bonās	bona
ABL.	bonis		bonis	bonis

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.—PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

63 EXAMPLES

1. Amicus est bonus.
2. Puella est pulchra.
3. Dōnum est grātum.
4. Amicī sunt bonī.
5. Puellae sunt pulchrae.
6. Dōna sunt grāta.
7. Rēgina māgnam cūram habet.
8. Poēta pulchrōs hortōs laudat.

(a) Notice that in these sentences and in those of all the preceding lessons the adjectives have the same Gen-

der, *Number*, and *Case* as the nouns they modify; also that in the first six sentences the adjectives are in the predicate. Compare these with predicate nouns (43).

- 64 **Rule.**—An Adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.

W. 293; B. 234; AG. 186; H. 394.

- 65 In the sentences used thus far the adjectives have the same terminations as the nouns they modify; but this is not always so—e. g., we must say, *bonus agricola*, *boni agricolae*, etc., since *agricola* is masculine.

Decline *clārus poēta*.

66

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

<i>argentum</i> , -ī, n. <i>silver, money</i> .	<i>Horātius</i> , ¹ -ī, m. <i>Horace</i> .
<i>dōnum</i> , -ī, n. <i>gift</i> .	<i>lupus</i> , -ī, m. <i>wolf</i> .
<i>filius</i> , ¹ -ī, m. <i>son</i> .	<i>Mūsa</i> , -ae, f. <i>Muse</i> .
<i>gladius</i> , ¹ -ī m. <i>sword</i> .	<i>periculum</i> , -ī, n. <i>danger</i> .
<i>grātia</i> , -ae, f. <i>gratitude</i> , <i>favor</i> (<i>grātus</i> , -a, -um).	<i>peplus</i> , -ī, m. <i>people</i> .
	<i>scūtum</i> , -ī, n. <i>shield</i> .

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*. *quoque*, adv., *also, too*.

VERBS

<i>erat</i> , (<i>he</i> , etc.) <i>was</i> .	<i>errābat</i> , ² (<i>he</i> , etc.) <i>was wan-</i> <i>dering, wandered</i> .
<i>erant</i> , (<i>they</i>) <i>were</i> .	

¹ The Genitive singular of all nouns in -īus ends in single -ī; the accent is always on the penult: *filīi*, *Horātīi*.

The Vocative singular of *filius* and all proper names in -īus also ends in -ī: *filīi*, *Horātīi*.

² Notice how the form of this tense is related to the present *errat*. *Errābat* is called the Imperfect tense and is equivalent to the English Progressive Preterite or to the simple Preterite. Form the Imperfects of *fugat*, *laudat*, *narrat*, and *servat*. The imperfect of *dat* is *dābat*, *dābant*.

errābant , (<i>they</i>) <i>were wandering, wandered.</i>	habitābat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>was living, lived, dwelt.</i>
fugat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>puts to flight.</i>	habitābant , (<i>they</i>) <i>were living, lived, dwelt.</i>
fugant , (<i>they</i>) <i>put to flight.</i>	servat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>saves, protects.</i>
habēbat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>was having, had.</i>	servant , (<i>they</i>) <i>save, protect.</i>
habēbant , (<i>they</i>) <i>were having, had.</i>	

- 67** 1. Horātius erat clārus poēta. 2. In Italiā habitābat et populō Rōmānō cārus erat. 3. Filius vilicī erat et villam parvam, dōnum amicī, habēbat. 4. Ibi habitābat et villam amābat. 5. Nōn multum argentum sed multōs amicōs habēbat. 6. Horātius parvus filius vilicī in silvā errābat. 7. Ibi lupus quoque errābat. 8. Gladius et scūtum nōn erant Horātiō. 9. Itaque māgnō in¹ periculō erat Horātius, sed Mūsae poētam servābant. 10. Horātius lupum fugābat et Mūsīs grātiam habēbat.

- 68** 1. Where did the famous poet Horace live? 2. Italy was the native land of the poet Horace. 3. The poet's life was not long, but it was dear to the Muses. 4. The Muses saved Horace's life; therefore he felt grateful² to the goddesses and gave (them)³ many gifts. 5. Horace put a wolf to flight in the forest. 6. Horace's friend gave (him)³ a beautiful country house. 7. Horace did not have great gardens and many slaves. 8. But the gifts of his friend were acceptable to the poet.

¹ A monosyllabic preposition frequently stands between an adjective and its noun.

² Compare sentence 10 above.

³ Omit.

LESSON VI

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

Nouns in -er and -ir

69

PARADIGMS

Puer, boy.**puero-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	puer	puerī
GEN.	puerī	puerōrum
DAT.	puerō	puerīs
ACCU.	puerum	puerōs
ABL.	puerō	puerīs

Ager, field.**agro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	ager	agrī
GEN.	agrī	agrōrum
DAT.	agrō	agrīs
ACCU.	agrum	agrōs
ABL.	agrō	agrīs

Vir, man.**viro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	vir	virī
GEN.	virī	virōrum
DAT.	virō	virīs
ACCU.	virum	virōs
ABL.	virō	virīs

(a) Notice that with the exception of the nominative and vocative singular these nouns are declined like **ser-vus**; also that the only difference between the declension

of **puer** and **ager** is that **puer** keeps the **e** of the nominative throughout, while **ager** drops it. Most nouns in **-er** of the Second Declension are declined like **ager**.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

70

EXAMPLES

1. **Poëta cum filiō errat.** *The poet is walking with (his) son.*
2. **Quintus cum vilicō habitābat.** *Quintus lived with (his) steward.*
3. **Rēgina cum filiabus in hortō erat.** *The queen was in the garden with (her) daughters.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablative with **cum** is used to denote the person who accompanies the subject. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

- 71 **Rule.**—Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition **cum**.

W. 392; B. 222; AG. 248 a; H. 473, 1.

72

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

- | | |
|--|--|
| ager, agrī, m. <i>field.</i> | magister, magistri, m. <i>school-master, teacher.</i> |
| bellum, -ī, n. <i>war.</i> | |
| Britanni, -ōrum, m. <i>Britons, inhabitants of Britain.</i> | oppidum, -ī, n. <i>town.</i> |
| | praemium,² -ī, n. <i>reward.</i> |
| liber, libri, m. <i>book.</i> | Rōma, -ae, f. <i>Rome.</i> |
| liberi,¹ -ōrum, m. <i>children (free-born).</i> | vir, viri, m. <i>man.</i> |

ADJECTIVES

- | | |
|--|---|
| antiquus, -a, -um, <i>ancient, old.</i> | validus, -a, -um, <i>strong, sturdy.</i> |
|--|---|

¹ Not used in the singular.

² The genitive singular of neuter nouns in **-ium** ends in single **-ī**; **praemium, praemī** (66, 1).

VERBS

<i>erit, (he, etc.) will be.</i>	<i>dabunt, (they) will give.</i>
<i>erunt, (they) will be.</i>	<i>habēbit, (he, etc.) will have.</i>
<i>amābit,¹ (he, etc.) will love.</i>	<i>habēbunt, (they) will have.</i>
<i>amābunt, (they) will love.</i>	<i>servābit, (he, etc.) will save.</i>
<i>dabit, (he, etc.) will give.</i>	<i>servābunt, (they) will save.</i>
<i>cum, prep. with abl. with.</i>	<i>semper, always.</i>

- 73** 1. *Vīlicus cum servīs est in agrīs.* 2. *Servī Marcī agricolae in hortō labōrant.* 3. *Bonīs servīs dominus praemium dabit.* 4. *In Britannīa sunt antiquae viae Rōmānae.* 5. *Multi liberī sunt Marcō agricolae, pulchra filia et validī filii.* 6. *Liberī poētae habēbunt bonum magistrum.* 7. *Iūlia, poētae filia, librōs magistrī cūrat.* 8. *Puerī cum amicīs in lātā silvā semper errant.* 9. *Erunt validī virī, gladium et scūtum habēbunt et bella amābunt.* 10. *Nauta cum liberīs ōceanum nāvigat.* 11. *Māgnō in periculō erunt liberī, sed nauta liberōs servābit.*

- 74** 1. *Marcus's sons live in the town with their teacher.* 2. *The children will not have much money, but they will have many good books.* 3. *The teacher wanders in the ancient woods and fields with the children.* 4. *He tells the boys and girls many good stories.* 5. *The teacher will give the boys books, not money, as a reward.* 6. *The children will love the books of the poet Horace, the gift of (their)² teacher.* 7. *The books of the poet Horace will always be famous.* 8. *A great reputation will be the reward of a good poet.*

¹ Notice how these Futures are related to the present and imperfect (66) forms of the same verbs. Form Futures, singular and plural, of *fugat*, *laudat*, *narrat*, and write sentences containing these forms.

² Omit.

LESSON VII

THE VERB SUM, to be

- 75 LEARN the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive of **sum** (485).

(a) Notice that the endings of the verb learned indicate the *person* and *number*, as the endings of nouns indicate the *case* and *number*. Thus far only the third person has been employed: **est, erat, erit** in the singular; **sunt, erant, erunt** in the plural. The subjects of the first and second persons are expressed only for emphasis.

- 76 **Rule.**—A finite verb agrees with its subject in **Number and Person**.

W. 296; B. 254, 1; AG. 204; H. 388.

- 77 1. Sum, eram, erō. 2. Es, erās, eris. 3. Estis, erātis, eritis. 4. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 5. Erat, esse, erit. 6. Estis, eritis, erunt.

- 78 1. You (sing.) are, you (sing.) were. 2. You (plu.) will be, you were. 3. I was, you shall be, they are. 4. They are, they were, they shall be.

79 Adjectives in -er

PARADIGMS

Niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACCU.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigris	nigris	nigris
ACCU.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigris	nigris	nigris

Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserae	miserī
DAT.	miserō	miserae	miserō
ACCU.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miseris	miseris	miseris
ACCU.	miserōs	miserās	misera
ABL.	miseris	miseris	miseris

(a) Notice that these adjectives in *-er* have the same peculiarities of declension as nouns in *-er*; the feminine nominative shows whether the adjective follows *ager* or *puer*.

80

VOCABULARY

aeger, -gra, -grum, feeble, niger, -gra, -grum, black.
sick. pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beau-
cōteri, -ae, -a,¹ the rest of. tiful.
liber, -era, -erum, free. sacer, -era, -erum, sacred.
miser, -era, -erum, wretched, tener, -era, -erum, delicate,
unhappy. soft, tender.

¹ Usually plural; the masculine and neuter are frequently used as substantives.

LESSON VIII

FIRST OR *a* CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE; PRESENT SYSTEM

- 83 THE Principal Parts of a Latin verb are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Participle. When these are known all other forms can easily be determined. Thus the Principal Parts of *amō* are :

amō, I love. *amāre*, to love. *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
amātus, having been loved.

- 84 Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive active of *amō* (479).

(a) Notice that all these forms, with the apparent exception of the first person singular of the present indicative, are formed from the stem *amā-*, which may be obtained by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive. This form *amā-* is called the Present Stem, and the tenses formed from it belong to the Present System.¹

- 85 The Personal Endings express Person, Number, and Voice. They are given for the active voice in the following table :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-m, -ō	-mus
SECOND.	-s	-tis
THIRD.	-t	-nt

¹ The present and imperfect subjunctive, the present and future imperative, and the present participle, which also belong to the Present System, will be taken up later.

86 The Imperfect is formed by adding to the stem *amā*-, *-bā*-, sometimes called the Tense Sign of the imperfect, to which are added the personal endings. The Tense Sign of the Future for all verbs of the First and Second Conjugation is *-bī*-, which appears as *-bō* in the 1st pers. sing. and *-bu*- in the 3d pers. plural.

87 Inflect like *amō* the following:

<i>fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugā-</i>	<i>servō, servāre, servāvī, ser-</i>
<i>tus, to put to flight.</i>	<i>vātus, to save.</i>
<i>laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, lau-</i>	<i>vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocā-</i>
<i>dātus, to praise.</i>	<i>tus, to call.</i>

88 1. *Laudō, laudābās, laudābit.* 2. *Servābitis, servābā-*
mus, servat. 3. *Fugāmus, fugābāmus, fugābimus.* 4. *Vo-*
cat, vocāre, vocābat. 5. *Fugābis, laudābō, servābātis.*
6. *Fugant, fugābant, fugābunt.*

89 1. He is calling, they will save. 2. I am praising, I
was praising, I shall praise. 3. You are putting to flight,
you were putting to flight, you will put to flight. 4. He
calls, they called, you will call. 5. To save, you will save,
you saved.

90 1. *Rōma erat antiquum oppidum in Ītaliā.* 2. *Ibi*
populus Rōmānus habitābat. 3. *Validī viri erant Rōmānī*
*et cum cēteris populis Ītaliae bellā agēbant.*¹ 4. *Populō*
Rōmānō erant lātī agri. 5. *Multi equi in tenerā herbā*
agrōrum errābant. 6. *Rōmānī Rōmam, pulchrum oppi-*
dum, semper amābunt et laudābunt. 7. *Rōmulus erat*
clārus Rōmānus. 8. *Magister, liberis pulchrā fābulā*
*dē*² (*about*) *Rōmulō narrās.* 9. *Fābulās narrāre mihi (to*

¹ *Carried on.*

² A common preposition with the ablative.

me) grātum est: fābulam dē Rōmulō narrābō. 10. Lupa¹ (*she-wolf*) Rōmulum puerum cūrābat et vitam miserī puerī servābat. 11. Rōmulus cum lupā in silvā habitābat. 12. Puerī, amātisne fābulam dē Rōmulō?

- 91 1. Master,² you will call your slaves. 2. I call my slaves; you call yours. 3. Slaves, you will work in the fields diligently³ with your master. 4. You shall have a fine reward; you shall be free men. 5. He will set free the good slaves. 6. They did work diligently³ and their master set them free. 7. To a good farmer the earth will give many rewards. 8. He chased away the wolf and saved the children. 9. To save the poet was pleasing to the Muses.

92

READING EXERCISE

The Retort Truthful

Nāsica⁴ ad poētam Ennium vēnit (*came*) et quaesīvit (*asked for*) poētam. Ancilla dixit (*said*), "Ennius nōn domī (*at home*) est;" sed Nāsica sēnsit (*perceived that*) ancillam⁵ domini iūssū (*at the order*) dixisse (*had spoken*) et poētam⁶ intus (*within*) esse (*was*). Paucis (*few*) post diēbus⁶ (*days*) ad Nāsicam vēnit Ennius et eum (*him*) quaesīvit; sed exclāmat (*cried out*) Nāsica sē⁶ (*he*) domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid? (*what?*) egō (*I*) nōn cōgnōscō (*recognize*) vōcem (*voice*) tuam?" Hic (*at this*) Nāsica: Homō (*man*) es impudēns.⁷ Egō cum (*when*) tē (*you*) quaererem,⁸ ancillae⁹ tuae crēdidī (*I believed*) tē⁵

¹ Compare **lupus**, 66.² Not **magister**.³ **diligenter**.⁴ A distinguished Roman lawyer.⁵ Subject of the following infinitive.⁶ Abl. of time.⁷ Guess at the meaning. What English word is derived from it?⁸ First person singular, imp. subj. act. Compare **quaesīvit**, the perf. indic. of the same verb. Translate as if indicative.⁹ Dative with the following verb.

domī nōn esse; tū (*you*) mihī¹ (*me*) nōn crēdis² ipsī³ (*myself*) ?

LESSON IX

FIRST OR *a* CONJUGATION (Continued)

PASSIVE VOICE

- 93 THE Principal Parts of a Latin verb in the Passive Voice are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, and Perfect Participle. Thus the Principal Parts of *amō* in the passive are :

amor, *I am loved.* *amāri*, *to be loved.* *amātus*, *having been loved.*

- 94 Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive passive of *amō* (479).

(*a*) Notice that all the forms learned are based on the present stem *amā-*, and that the imperfect and future indicative passive are formed with the same tense signs, *-bā-*, *-bi-* (*be*), as the corresponding tenses in the active.

- 95 The Personal Endings of the indicative passive are :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-r	-mur
SECOND.	-ris, -re	-mini
THIRD.	-tur	-ntur

- 96 Form the principal parts in the passive and inflect *fugō*, *laudō*, *servō*, *vocō*.

¹ Dative with the following verb.

² Present tense. What person and number?

³ Agreeing with *mihī*.

97 1. Amāre, amārī. 2. Amābam, amābar; vocābō, vocābor. 3. Laudātur, laudābātur, laudābitur. 4. Laudāmini, laudābimini, laudābāmini. 5. Fugant, fugābuntur, fugāris. 6. Vocābis, vocāberis, vocābāre. 7. Amāre, laudārī, fugāre.

98 1. We are calling, you saved (plu.). 2. We shall be saved, they will save. 3. I did call, he is saving, he will save. 4. You will be saved, you are being saved. 5. To call, to be saved, to put to flight. 6. They were praising, they were being praised, they were praised. 7. We are being saved, you shall be saved.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT

99

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Quintus amicum servat. | <i>Quintus saves his friend.</i> |
| 2. Amicus ā Quintō servātur. | <i>The friend is saved by Quintus.</i> |
| 3. Dominus servum liberat. | <i>The master sets free the slave.</i> |
| 4. Servus ā dominō liberātur. | <i>The slave is set free by his master.</i> |

(a) Notice that when a statement is changed from the active form to the passive, the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, and that the subject of the active verb is shifted from the nominative to the ablative with the preposition *ā* (or *ab*¹). Such an ablative with *ā* or *ab* tells who the doer or agent of the action is, and is called *Ablative of Agent*.

100 *Rule.*—The Agent with Passive verbs is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

W. 379; B. 216; AG. 246; H. 468.

¹ *Ā* or *ab* may be used before consonants, *ab* before vowels.

101

VOCABULARY

incola , -ae, m. <i>inhabitant</i> .	oppidānus , -a, -um, <i>belonging to a town (oppidum)</i> ; (frequently used as a substantive) <i>an inhabitant of a town</i> .
lupa , -ae, f. <i>she-wolf (lupus)</i> .	
mūrus , -i, m. <i>wall (of a city)</i> .	
praesidium , -i, n. <i>defense, protection</i> .	
aedificō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to build</i> .	cūrō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to care for</i> .
appellō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to call, name</i> .	pūgnō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to fight</i> .
ā , ab, prep. with abl., <i>by</i> .	dē , prep. with abl., <i>about, concerning</i> .

- 102 1. Rōmulus Rōmam aedificābat. 2. Rōma ā Rōmulō, virō validō, aedificābātur. 3. Oppidum pulchrum ā Rōmulō Rōma appellābātur. 4. Rōma ab incolis semper amābitur. 5. Clāra fābula dē Rōmulō liberis ā magistrō narrābitur. 6. Vitam Rōmuli lupa servābat et puerum cūrābat. 7. Incolae oppidi oppidānī¹ appellantur. 8. Incolae antiqui Rōmae liberi viri erant et Rōmāni appellābantur. 9. Mūrus, praesidium oppidi, ab Rōmānis aedificābātur. 10. In multis bellis cum ceteris incolis Italiae antiqui Rōmāni pūgnābant.

- 103 1. The poet Horace was saved by the Muses. 2. Romulus was saved and cared for by a she-wolf. 3. Ancient Rome was a strong town, and was built by Romulus. 4. Romulus was loved by the Roman people. 5. An altar sacred to Romulus was built by the Romans in the city. 6. The famous wall of Britain was not built by the ancient Britons, but by the Romans. 7. The horses are sick and are being cared for by their master. 8. To be cared for by their master is pleasant to the horses. 9. Tender grass is being given the handsome horses by the slaves.

¹ Predicate nominative.

LESSON X

PERFECT SYSTEM OF SUM

104 LEARN the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive of **sum** (485).

105 These tenses belong to the perfect system of **sum**, which is formed on the stem **fu-**, obtained by dropping **-i** of the first person singular of the perfect indicative.

(a) Notice that the perfect system of this verb is formed on a different stem from the present system.

(b) Notice also that the personal endings of the pluperfect and future perfect are the same as those of the present system. The perfect indicative has certain endings peculiar to itself.

106 The Personal Endings of the Perfect Indicative Active are shown in the following table :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-i	-imus
SECOND.	-isti	-istis
THIRD.	-it	-erunt, -ere

107 1. Fuistī, fuerās, fueris. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.
3. Fuisse, fuēre, fuimus. 4. Fui, fuerō, fuerātis. 5. Fuis-
tis, fuerātis, fueritis.

108 1. I have been, I shall have been. 2. I had been, they
had been, they will have been. 3. He had been, he will
have been, to have been. 4. We shall have been, we have
been, we had been.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

109

EXAMPLES

1. Viri gladiis armantur. *The men are being armed with swords.*
2. Nautae oceanum ventō nāvigant. *Sailors sail the sea by means of the wind.*
3. Lupum armis fugābānt servi. *The slaves put the wolf to flight with weapons.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *gladiis*, *ventō*, *armis* denote the *Means* or *Instrument* by which the action of the verb is performed; also that the Means or Instrument of the action goes along with, accompanies, the actor in the action, so that such an ablative, which is called the *Ablative of Means* or *Instrument*, is in reality similar to the Ablative of Accompaniment (71), used without the preposition. It is generally translated *with* or *by*.

- 110 **Rule.**—The Ablative is used to denote the Means or Instrument.

W. 386; B. 218; AG. 248, c; H. 476.

111

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| arma, -ōrum, n. plu. arms, weapons. | hasta, -ae, f. spear. |
| causa, -ae, f. cause, reason. | inimicus, -i, m. enemy (<i>amicus</i> , 56). |
| deus, ¹ -i, m. god. | proelium, -i, n. battle. |
| Gallus, m. a Gaul. | templum, -i, n. temple. |
| Gallia, f. Gaul. | victōria, -ae, f. victory. |
| dubius, -a, -um, doubtful. | proximus, -a, -um, next, nearest. |

¹ Vocative deus.

*oppugnō, -āre,*¹ *to storm, at-* *ōlim, once, once on a time,*
tack. *formerly.*
diū, long, for a long time. *sine, prep. with abl., with-*
fortiter, bravely. *out.*

112 1. Terra proxima Italiae (dat.) Gallia appellābatur.
 2. Antīqui incolae Galliae Rōmānōs nōn amābant. 3. In-
 imīcī populī Rōmānī semper fuerant. 4. Incolae Galliae
 Galli ōlim appellābantur. 5. Multae causae belli cum
 Rōmānīs fuerant Gallīs. 6. Gallīs ōlim erant multa pul-
 chra oppida. 7. Multa oppida Gallōrum ā Rōmānīs op-
 pugnābantur. 8. Oppidānī armīs diū et fortiter pūgnā-
 bant. 9. Sed Galli validōs mūrōs nōn habēbant; itaque
 oppidānī miserī sine praesidiō fuērunt. 10. Gladiīs et
 hastīs pūgnābant et in templīs deōs vocābant, nam (for)
 victōria diū fuerat dubia.

113 1. The Romans stormed a town of the Gauls without
 reason. 2. Did the Gauls have a good reason for war²
 with the Romans? 3. The Gauls and the Romans had
 been enemies for a long time. 4. The Romans did not
 have the protection of a wall, but they were strong men.
 5. The battle had been for a long time doubtful. 6. The
 inhabitants called upon the gods in the temples. 7. But
 the gods gave the victory to their enemies. 8. The
 Romans put the townsmen to flight with their spears.

¹ In the following vocabularies only the present infinitive of verbs
 whose principal parts are like *amō* will be given.

² Compare 112, 5.

LESSON XI

PERFECT SYSTEM OF AMŌ

- 114 LEARN the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **amō** (479).

(a) Notice that the perfect system in the active is formed from the perfect stem **amāv-**, which may be obtained by dropping the ending **-i** of the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. Observe also the additions to this stem, by means of which the pluperfect and future perfect tenses are formed. With what forms of **sum** may they be compared?

(b) Notice that the perfect passive system is compounded of the perfect passive participle **amātus**, *having been loved*, and the proper tenses of **sum**—the present to form the perfect **amātus sum**, the imperfect to form the pluperfect **amātus eram**, and the future to form the future perfect **amātus erō**.

- 115 The participle is declined like the adjective **bonus**, and agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case exactly like a predicate adjective (63). For example:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
MASC.	puer est amātus ¹	pueri sunt amāti
FEM.	puella est amāta	puellae sunt amatae
NEUT.	dōnum est amātum	dōna sunt amāta

- 116 1. Amāvī, amātus sum, amāti sumus. 2. Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit. 3. Amāta es, amāta erās, amāta eris.

¹ This apparently reversed order is common; the predicate nature of the participle here clearly appears.

4. Amāvistis, amātī estis, amātī eritis. 5. Amāverō, amātus erō, amātus eram. 6. Amāta est, amatae erant, amāta erit. 7. Amātum erat, amāta sunt, amāta erunt. 8. Amāvistī, amāverās, amāveris. 9. Amāvisse, amātus esse. 10. Amāvērunt, amāverant, amāverint.

- 117 1. We loved, we had loved, we shall have loved.
2. We had been loved, you shall have loved, we shall have been loved. 3. You had loved, you had been loved, he has been loved. 4. They have loved, they were loved, they had been loved. 5. To have been loved, to have loved.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

118

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Pueri fābulā delectantur. | <i>The boys are delighted with the story.</i> |
| 2. Quintus victoriā est laudātus. | <i>Quintus was praised because of his victory.</i> |
| 3. Dominus servōs industriā laudāvit. | <i>The master praised the slaves on account of their industry.</i> |
| 4. Agricola filiōrum causā laborābit. | <i>The farmer will work for the sake of his sons.</i> |
| 5. Puer ā magistrō diligentīā laudābitur. | <i>The boy will be praised by the schoolmaster for his diligence.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *fābulā*, *victoriā*, *industriā*, etc., answer the question *Why?*—that is, that they express the *Cause* of the action of the verb. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Cause*, and may be translated by a variety of English phrases, as in the examples above.

- 119 **Rule.**—The Ablative is used to denote Cause.
W. 384; B. 219; AG. 245; H. 475.

120

VOCABULARY

amicitia , -ae, f. <i>friendship, alliance, friendly relations</i> (amicus , 54).	diligentia , -ae, f. <i>carefulness, industry.</i>
animus , -ī, m. <i>mind, courage, soul.</i>	finitimi , ¹ m. plu. <i>neighbors.</i>
cōpia , -ae, f. <i>plenty, abundance.</i>	frūmentum , -ī, n. <i>grain.</i>
cōpiae , -ārum, f. plu. <i>forces, troops.</i>	inopia , -ae, f. <i>want, lack, scarcity.</i>
expūgnō , -āre, <i>to take by storm, capture</i> (oppūgnō , 111).	odium , -ī, n. <i>hatred.</i>
incitō , -āre, <i>to arouse, stir up.</i>	portō , -āre, <i>to carry, bring.</i>
	superō , -āre, <i>to defeat, overcome.</i>
	vāstō , -āre, <i>lay waste.</i>

- 121 1. Gallī odiō Rōmānōrum² incitātī sunt. 2. Māgnus fuit animus Gallōrum; diū et fortiter pūgnāverunt. 3. Sed cōpiae oppidānōrum inopiā frūmentī superātae sunt. 4. In oppidō erat cōpia armōrum, nōn frūmentī. 5. Inopiā frūmentī auxilium oppidānis dabant finitimi. 6. Amicī populī Rōmānī appellātī sunt; causā amicītae frūmentum portānt. 7. Rōmānī oppidānōs armīs superāverunt, et sacra templa deōrum vāstāverunt. 8. Inopiā frūmentī, nōn cōpiis Rōmānōrum superātī fuerimus. 9. Sed finitimī auxilium miseris oppidānis odiō nōn dabunt. 10. Oppidum ab Rōmānīs amicōrum causā expūgnātum est; incolae oppidī fugātī et agrī vāstātī sunt.³ 11. Oppidum inimicōrum expūgnāvisse fuit Rōmānīs grātum. 12. Victōriā deōs laudābant Rōmānī et in templa arma portābant.

¹ Also used as an adjective—**finitimus**, -a, -um, *neighboring, bordering on.*

² The Latin language here uses the genitive case to represent the English objective case with the preposition *for*.

³ Notice that **sunt** does double duty for both **fugātī** and **vāstātī**.

- 122** 1. A wall has been built by the inhabitants of the town. 2. The inhabitants of the town built a strong wall on account of (their) many wars. 3. The neighbors had been stirred up by their hatred for the townsmen.¹ 4. The townsmen had been attacked by their neighbors, and because of (their) hatred their fields had been laid waste. 5. The forces in the town fought long and bravely with swords and spears, but the victory was doubtful. 6. The enemies of the Gauls were defeated and pacified by lack of supplies. 7. The Gauls' spirit is great; they will fight long and bravely. 8. A strong wall will be a great protection to the Gauls. 9. The friends of the Romans brought a supply of grain with great diligence; the Romans praised them for their friendship.

LESSON XII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HĪC* AND *ILLE***123***Hīc, this.*

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	hīc	haec	hōc
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius
DAT.	huic	huic	huic
ACCU.	hunc	hanc	hōc
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	his	his	his
ACCU.	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	his	his	his

¹ Compare 121, 1.

Ille, that.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	illi	illi	illi
ACCU.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis
ACCU.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis

(a) Notice that in the plural these pronouns follow closely the regular first and second declensions; but in the singular they differ widely.

- 124** Both **hic** and **ille** may be used alone as pronouns, or as pronominal adjectives in agreement with nouns.

(a) **Hic** points out something which is near the speaker in time, place, or thought, etc. It is therefore sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person: **hic puer**, *this boy* (near me); **hi libri**, *these books* (by my side, or which I have just mentioned, etc.).

(b) **Ille** points out something which is remote in time, place, thought, etc., from the speaker. It is therefore sometimes known as the demonstrative of the third person: **ille vir**, *that man* (yonder, near him); **illi libri**, *those books* (over there, mentioned some time ago, etc.).

(c) When **ille** and **hic** are contrasted in the same sentence they frequently mean *the former, the latter*:

ille bonus, hic malus est, The former is a good man, the latter bad.

(*d*) *Ille* is sometimes used in the sense of *the well-known, the famous*. It then follows its noun.

125

EXAMPLES

1. *Hic ager est meus, ille tuus.* *This field is mine, that yours.*
2. *Quintus et Marcus sunt Rōmānī; ille magister, hic est discipulus.* *Quintus and Marcus are Romans; the former is the teacher, the latter the pupil.*
3. *Horātius, poēta ille, Rōmānis fuit cārus.* *Horace, the well-known poet, was dear to the Romans.*

126

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---|---|
| Belgae, -ārum, m. plu. <i>the Belgians.</i> | intrō, -āre, to enter, go in. |
| coniūrō, -āre, to swear together, plot. | Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plu. <i>the Nervians (a Belgian people).</i> |
| contrā, prep. with accu., against. | numerus, -ī, m. <i>number.</i> |
| Haedui, -ōrum, m. plu. <i>the Haeduians (a Gallic people).</i> | nunc, adv. <i>now.</i> |
| inter, prep. with accu., among, between. | nūntiō, -āre, to send news, report. |
| intereā, adv. <i>meanwhile.</i> | pācō, -āre, to pacify, subdue. |
| | parō, -āre, to get ready, prepare. |

- 127 1. Caesar¹ māgnīs cum cōpiīs agrōs Nerviorum intrāvit. 2. Hī cum cēterīs Belgīs contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant. 3. Multae causae bellī erant illīs cum

¹ The declension of this noun will be given later.

Rōmānis. 4. Belgae fāmā bellī et odiō Rōmānōrum incitāti erant. 5. Haec Nervii ab amicis Haeduōrum erant nūntiāta: 6. "Rōmānus ille multa oppida expūgnāvit, oppidānōs miserōs fugāvit, agrōs lātōs vastāvit. 7. Haeduī ab illō multis proeliis pācātī,¹ nunc in amicitīā Rōmānōrum sunt." 8. Nōn amici sed servī Rōmānōrum erant. 9. Intereā Rōmānō illi ab inimicis Nerviorum haec erant nūntiāta: 10. "Māgnus numerus Nerviorum cum cēteris Belgis in armis est. 11. Cōpia frūmentī ab his parāta et auxilium ā finitimis est² datum."

- 128** 1. The Haeduans and the Nervians used to live³ in Gaul. 2. The former were in friendship with the Romans,⁴ but the latter had not yet been subdued. 3. A great number of these on account of their hatred of the Romans conspired with the rest of the Belgians. 4. And because of the scarcity of grain, aid was given them by their neighbors. 5. These, for the sake of their friendship, brought them (i. e., the former) an abundance of grain and of weapons. 6. This was reported to the Romans by their enemies. 7. And Caesar attacked their nearest town. 8. The inhabitants fought long and bravely, but that famous Roman defeated them and laid waste their fields.

¹ Notice that this is the perf. pass. participle agreeing with **Haeduī**, not a part of the indicative mood.

² Compare 121, 10, and notice how sentence 7 above differs from this.

³ What tense?

⁴ Genitive case.

LESSON XIII

THE RELATIVE *QUI*

PARADIGM

129

Qui, who, which, what.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	qui	quae	quod
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	qui	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

130

EXAMPLES

1. *Puer qui laudātur est bonus.* *The boy who is praised is good.*
2. *Horātius quem Rōmānī amābant clārus poēta erat.* *Horace, whom the Romans loved, was a famous poet.*
3. *Hōc est dōnum quod Quintō datum est.* *This is the gift which was given to Quintus.*
4. *Haec sunt dōna quae Marcus laudābat.* *These are the gifts which Marcus praised.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the relatives *qui*, *quem*, *quod*, *quae*, agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but that the cases are determined by the

construction of the relative sentences. Thus in sentences 1 and 3 **quī** and **quod** are the subjects of the relative sentences, and so happen to be in the same case as their antecedents; but in sentences 2 and 4 **quem** and **quae** are accusatives, objects of the verbs in the relative sentences. Their antecedents, however, are both nominative.

- 131** *Rule.*—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

W. 299; B. 250; AG. 198; H. 396.

132

VOCABULARY

ab-sum , ab-esse , ā-fui , <i>to be distant from</i> (with ab and the abl.)	hic , adv. <i>here, at this point or place</i> (compare the pronoun hic).
ad , prep. with accu. <i>to, toward.</i>	iam , ¹ adv. <i>now, already, at last.</i>
castra , -ōrum , n. plu. <i>a fortified camp.</i>	idōneus , -a , -um , <i>fit, suitable.</i>
cōnsilium , -ī , n. <i>plan, design.</i>	iuvo , -āre , iūvi , iūtus , <i>to help.</i>
convocō , -āre , <i>call together, assemble.</i>	locus , ² -ī , m. <i>place.</i>
dēcertō , -āre , <i>to contend, fight.</i>	longē , adv. <i>far, much</i> (longus , -a , -um).
exspectō , -āre , <i>to look out for, wait for, expect.</i>	nātūra , -ae , f. <i>nature.</i>
	parātus , -a , -um , <i>ready, prepared.</i>
	praeda , -ae , f. <i>booty.</i>
	properō , -āre , <i>to hurry, hasten.</i>

- 133** 1. Numerus Nerviorum quī in armīs parātī erant, ab Rēmīs nūntiātus est. 2. Hī, quōrum agrōs Caesar iam

¹ **Iam** means *now at last, already*, while **nunc**, 126, means *now at the present time*.

² The plural is neuter, **loca**, **-ōrum**; **locī**, **-ōrum** is used only to mean, *topics*.

intrāverat, proximī Galliae (dat.) erant. 3. Parātī erant Rōmānōs frūmentō et māgnīs cōpiīs iuvāre. 4. Cēteri Belgae, quī amīci Nerviorum erant, Rōmānōs exspectābant. 5. Rōmānī illō locō,¹ quī nātūrā proeliō (dat.) erat idōneus, ā Belgīs expectātī erant. 6. Hōc locō, quī ab castris Rōmānōrum nōn longē aberat, contrā populum Rōmānum armīs dēcertābunt Nervii. 7. Ubi (when) Rōmānō illi cōsiliū Nerviorum nūtiātum est, ad locum properāvīt. 8. Intereā Nervii cum animīs ad proelium parātīs illum ibi exspectābant. 9. Hīc inter Rōmānōs et Belgōs diū et fortiter pūgnātum est.² 10. Illi victōriā et praedae causā, hī prō³ liberis et patriā pūgnāverunt.

- 134** 1. Caesar called together those⁴ Belgians who had not conspired together. 2. These who were ready to contend in battle were the Remi. 3. The Haeduan, whose towns had been captured by the Romans, aided them with grain. 4. The Romans hurried to a place which was naturally suited for a camp. 5. They prepared supplies and assembled their allies at (ad) this place. 6. The camp was not far away from the place where the Nervii had already been waiting for them a long time. 7. They fought for the sake of their country, which they loved. 8. But the Romans had entered Gaul for the sake of booty.

¹ Abl. of place.

² This form of the verb has no personal subject, but supplies its subject (cf. *pūgna*, *battle*, *fighting*) in itself. Translate, *There was a battle*, or in a similar way. Such a verb is called an Impersonal Verb.

³ A common preposition with the abl., *for the sake of*.

⁴ Use the proper case of *ille*.

LESSON XIV

**THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS
THE INTERROGATIVE QUIS**

PARADIGMS

135

Is, that.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	is	ea	id
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius
DAT.	eī	eī	eī
ACCU.	eum	eam	id
ABL.	eō	eā	eō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	eī, ii	eae	ea
GEN.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACCU.	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

(a) Notice the similarity in the declension of **is**, **hic**, and **ille**.

(b) **Is, that**, is in meaning like **ille**, but less definite; it often means simply *he, she, it*, and is very common as an antecedent of **qui**: **is qui oppidum expūgnāvit**, *he who stormed the town*; **ea quae portāvit** *that which he brought*.

136

Quis, who?

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE AND FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	quis	quid
GEN.	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quō

PLURAL

Like *quī* relative.

(a) **Quis** is the substantive form of the interrogative —i. e., the form used without a noun : **quis vocat?** *Who calls?*

(b) The adjective form is **quī**, *what? what kind of?* **Quī puer vocat?** *What boy calls?* **Quod dōnum portāvit?** *What gift did he bring?* This **quī** is declined exactly like *quī* relative.¹

137

EXAMPLES

1. **Magister diligentiam eius laudāvit.** *The teacher praised his industry.*
2. **Is, quī cum diligentia laborāvit, laudatus est.** *The one who worked industriously was praised.*
3. **Quis discipulum laudāvit?** *Who praised the pupil?*
4. **Qui magister diligentiam discipuli laudāvit?** *What teacher praised the pupil's industry?*
5. **Quod dōnum dabit magister ei, quī cum diligentia laborāvit?** *What gift will the teacher give to the one who worked industriously?*

¹ It should be said that the distinction between substantive **quis** and adjective **quī** was not always observed by Roman writers. Thus we find **quis vir vocat?** as well as **quī vir vocat?** Yet it will be well in translating the English exercises of this book to observe the distinction made above.

138

VOCABULARY

comparō, -āre , to get ready, get together.	mora, -ae , f. delay.
concilium, -i , n. conference, a meeting of state or of war.	nam , conj. for.
in , prep. with accu., into. (Compare in with abl., 56.)	noster, -tra, -trum , our (com- pare meus).
lĕgātus, -i , m. envoy, ambas- sador.	postulō, -āre , to demand, ask for.
	reliquus, -a, -um , remaining, the rest. (Compare cēteri , 80.)
	socius, -i , m. ally.

- 139 1. Quī Gallī contrā amīcōs nostrōs coniūrāverunt? 2. Illi erant Nervii et ceteri Belgae. 3. Socii populi Rōmāni erant Haedui, finitimi Nerviorum, qui ab Rōmānis pacati erant. 4. Ii nunc cōpiam frumentī ab illis postulābant. 5. Quā dē causā erant¹ Nervii contrā Rōmānōs incitāti? 6. Odiō populi Rōmāni quī olim Haeduos pacāverunt. 7. Iam ab eis erat concilium Belgārum convocātum. 8. Quod cōsilium eō in conciliō ab Haeduis est datum? 9. Hōc cōsilium datum est: reliquos Belgās incitāre, sine morā cōpiam frumentī comparāre, cōpiās in oppidum proximum convocāre. 10. Ibi Rōmānōs expectāre et cum eis prō patriā decertāre erat cōsilium. 11. A quibus erant haec Rōmānō illi nuntiāta? Ab lĕgātis Rēmōrum, quī nostri amīci diū fuerant. 12. Nam cum reliquis Belgis nōn coniūrāverant et auxilium Rōmānis dare parāti erant.

- 140 1. For what reason did the Remi not conspire with the rest of the Belgae? 2. The rest of the Belgae were already in arms, but these were our allies. 3. They were prepared to give aid with supplies of grain. 4. What was the

¹ The forms of **sum** are frequently thus separated in position from the perfect participles to which they belong grammatically.

plan of the Nervii? 5. Their plan was to call together an assembly of the Belgians, and on account of lack of supplies to demand aid from their neighbors. 6. These brought the grain which had been asked for, but the Remi conspired with the Romans against the rest of the Gauls. 7. And so their fields were devastated by the Nervii and their allies. 8. In the meantime, Caesar had subdued the Haeduans and had taken by storm a great number of their towns. 9. Who were these and whose allies had they been?

LESSON XV

THE THIRD DECLENSION

141 THE stem ends in a consonant or -i.

All consonant stems may be found by dropping the ending -is of the genitive singular: *prīncip-is*, *rēg-is*.

Consonant stems are divided into two classes, Mute and Liquid Stems, according to the nature of the final consonant. Mute Stems end in b or p, c or g, d or t (6).

142

MUTE STEMS

PARADIGMS

Princeps, m. *chief*.

prīncip-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>
GEN.	<i>prīncipis</i>	<i>prīncipum</i>
DAT.	<i>prīncipī</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>
ACCU.	<i>prīncipem</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>
ABL.	<i>prīncipe</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>

Rēx, m. *king*. **Miles**, m. *soldier*.
rēg- **milit-**

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	rēx	miles
GEN.	rēgis	militis
DAT.	rēgi	militi
ACCU.	rēgem	militem
ABL.	rēge	militē

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	rēgēs	militēs
GEN.	rēgum	militum
DAT.	rēgibus	militibus
ACCU.	rēgēs	militēs
ABL.	rēgibus	militibus

(a) Notice that the nominatives singular of these nouns ends in **-s**. Stems in **b** or **p** retain their final consonants unchanged before this ending: **urbs**, **prīnceps**; when stems end in **c** or **g**, the final consonant combines with **-s** to form **x**: (**dūc-s**) **dūx**, (**rēg-s**) **rēx**; but stems ending in **d** or **t** drop their final consonants before **-s** of the nominative: (**custōd-s**) **custōs**, (**milit-s**) **miles**.

(b) Notice also that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative: **milit-**, **miles**, etc.

These few changes can easily be learned by observation.

- 143 Make a list of the terminations and commit it to memory.

Decline together: **hic prīnceps**; **rēx ille**; **is miles**.

144

VOCABULARY

administrō, -āre, *to manage*. **comes**, **comitis**, m. and f.
ante, prep. with accu. *before*. *companion, attendant*.

coniūnx , coniugia, f. <i>consort</i> ,	lūx , lūcia, f. <i>light</i> .
<i>wife</i> .	mīles , militis, m. <i>soldier</i> .
custōs , custōdis, m. <i>guard</i> ,	pāx , pācia, f. <i>peace</i> .
<i>keeper</i> .	prīnceps , prīncipia, m. <i>leader</i> ,
dux , ducia, m. <i>leader</i> .	<i>chief</i> .
grex , gregia, m. <i>flock, herd</i> .	rēx , rēgis, m. <i>king</i> .
iūdex , iūdicia, m. <i>judge</i> .	vulnerō , -āre, <i>to wound</i> .

145 (a) 1. Hi quī coniūrābant et bellum administrābant erant prīncipēs Galliae. 2. Concilium eōrum, quī agrōs populī Rōmānī intrābant, ā rēge convocātum est. 3. Ab eō locō, quī nātūrā castris idōneus erat, milītēs Rōmānī nōn longē aberant. 4. Nam oppidum quod erat in viā iam expūgnāverant et ad sociōs properābant. 5. Hic, inter castra Gallōrum et oppidum nostrum, errābant multi gregēs. 6. Quōrum custōdēs, miserī servī rēgis, ā militibus fugāti erant. 7. Ante lūcem incolae oppidī coniugēs et liberōs in silvās portāverant, arma comparāverant, ducem expectābant.

(b) 8. Eō locō inter milītēs rēgis et Caesaris diū et fortiter pūgnātum est¹ et multi vulnerāti sunt. 9. Gallī, quī ōlim cum Rōmānīs pūgnāverant, iam pācis causā eōs iuvāre parāti erant. 10. Sed Rōmānī inopiā frūmentī agrōs eōrum vastāre et sociōs nostrōs iuvāre parābant. 11. In cēterīs oppidīs māgna cōpia frūmentī erat; hōc Caesarī (dat.) ab lēgātīs Rēmōrum et comitibus rēgis nūntiātum est. 12. Inter custōdēs gregum et comitēs meōs erit iūdex Caesar.

146 1. Owing to lack of supplies Caesar prepared to lay waste the lands of the Gauls. 2. The Gauls, whose wives and children were in the forests, fought for (prō) their lives² with swords and spears. 3. In the fields there were many flocks, of which the king's children were the guards.

¹ Compare 133, 9.

² Use the singular.

4. The leader's plan was to help the allies of the Roman people and to pacify the other Gauls. 5. Before daylight he called the principal men of Gaul, together with¹ the king, into the camp. 6. Here Caesar announced his plan in regard to peace. 7. "I will be judge between the Remi and the other peoples of Gaul, and for the sake of peace I will give you many gifts." 8. The Gauls were ready to assist the Romans with grain, which had been in their towns for a long time.

147

READING EXERCISE

Dē antiquis rēgibus Rōmānī haec narrant: primus qui in Italiā rēgnāvit² erat Sātūrnus. Hīc nōn longē ab Iāniculō³ arcem (*citadel*) condidit (*founded*) quam Sātūrniam appellāvit. Agricultūram⁴ quoque Italōs primus docuit (*taught*). Postēā (*afterwards*) Latīnus in illis locis rēgnāvit. Sub (*under*) hōc rēge Trōia in Asiā ab Graecis expūgnāta est. Itaque Aenēas, clārus Trōiānus, Anchisae⁵ et deae filius, cum multis sociis ex patriā aufūgit⁶ (*fled*) et in Italiā pervēnit (*came*). Ibi rēx Latīnus eī filiam Lāvīniam dedit. Aenēas oppidum condidit, quod Lāvīnium appellavit. Tertius rēx erat Ascanius, Aenēae filius, qui rēgnum⁷ (*throne*) in alium (*another*) locum trānstulit (*transferred*), et in monte (*mountain*) Albānō novum oppidum condidit, quod Albam Longam appellāvit. Hōc locō multī rēgnāvērunt, dum (*until*) Rōmulus, quī Rheae Silviae et dēi filius erat, in monte Palātiō Rōmam condidit.

¹ Together with, translate by one word.

² rēgnō, -āre, is a verb formed from the same base as rēx (rēg-). What must the verb mean?

³ The high ridge across the Tiber from Rome.

⁴ Guess the meaning.

⁵ Gen. sing. of the Greek name Anchīsēs.

⁶ Perf. indic. of aufūgiō: compare fugō, -āre.

⁷ What other words have the same stem?

LESSON XVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION

MUTE STEMS (*Continued*)

148

PARADIGMS

Vōx, f. *voice*. **Obses**, m. and f. *hostage*. **Virtūs**, f. *manliness*,
vōc- **obsid-** **virtūt-** [*courage*].

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	vōx	obses	virtūs
GEN.	vōcis	obsidis	virtūtis
DAT.	vōcī	obsidī	virtūtī
ACCU.	vōcem	obsidem	virtutem
ABL.	vōce	obside	virtute

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs
GEN.	vōcum	obsidum	virtutum
DAT.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtutibus
ACCU.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs
ABL.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtutibus

Caput, n. *head*.
capit-

SINGULAR

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	caput	capita
GEN.	capitis	capitum
DAT.	capitī	capitibus
ACCU.	caput	capita
ABL.	capite	capitibus

(a) Notice the manner in which the nominatives of **vōx**, **obses**, and **virtūs** are formed, and compare them with the similar nouns in the preceding lesson.

(b) Notice that the nominative of **caput** is the simple stem with the second vowel changed from **i** to **ū**. Compare the declension of this noun with that of neuters of the Second Declension (60).

ABLATIVE OF MANNER

149

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Rēx cum audāciā pūgnāvit. | <i>The king fought with boldness.</i> |
| 2. Rēx magnā cum audāciā pūgnāvit. | <i>The king fought with great boldness.</i> |
| 3. Rēx magnā audāciā pūgnāvit. | <i>The king fought with great boldness.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives answer the question, *How?* That is, they tell the manner in which the king fought. Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Manner*.¹

150

Rule.—The manner of an action is expressed by the Ablative, usually with *cum*; but if the Ablative is modified by an adjective, *cum* need not be used.

W. 390; B. 220; AG. 248; H. 473, 3.

151

VOCABULARY

audācia , -ae, f. <i>boldness</i> , Germāni , -ōrum, m. <i>Germans</i> .	
caput , capitis , n. <i>head</i> .	laus , laudis , f. <i>praise, glory</i> .
celeriter , adv. <i>quickly</i> .	māgnoperē , adv. <i>greatly</i> .

¹ The same idea is frequently expressed in Latin as in English by an adverb: **rēx audācter** (*boldly*) **pūgnāvit** = **rēx cum audāciā pūgnāvit**.

obses, obsidis, m. and f. <i>hostage</i> .	sacerdōs, sacerdōtia, m. <i>priest</i> .
occupō, -āre, <i>to seize</i> .	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> .
per, prep. with accu. <i>through, by means of</i> .	(Compare noster, 138.) virtūs, virtūtis, f. <i>manliness, courage</i> .
prō, prep. with abl. <i>for, for the sake of</i> .	vōx, vōcia, f. <i>voice, word</i> .

152 1. Dē audāciā eōrum quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant iam erat nūntiātum.¹ 2. Sed Caesar obsidēs, quōrum māgnus numerus erat, celeriter convocāvit et per sacerdōtem haec nūntiāvit. 3. "Māgnā virtūte, obsidēs, pūgnāvērunt Gallī et vestrī socii, et māgna per Galliam est laus eōrum. 4. Itaque eōs māgnoperē laudō; semper amīcī et socii populi Rōmānī appellābuntur. 5. Nam eī fortiter prō patriā et liberis decertāvērunt. 6. Sed nunc arma et auxilia ā comitibus rēgis contrā Rōmānōs parantur; castra nostra cum audāciā oppūgnābunt. 7. Sed parātus sum eōs in amīcitiā habēre,² dōna dare, bellum cum Germānīs administrāre." 8. Haec sacerdōs māgnā vōce nūntiāvit et obsidēs, quī principēs Galliae erant, ā Caesare cum cūrā servābantur. 9. Intereā Belgae, quī ōlim pācātī erant, frūmentī cōpiam per lēgātōs dare properāvērunt. 10. Haec Caesarī erant grāta; itaque multa oppida Germānōrum celeriter occupāvit et cōpias eōrum fugāvit.

153 1. In the camp were many hostages, who had been protected (servō) by the Romans with great care. 2. They were the chief men of Gaul who once had fought with great bravery against Caesar and the Romans. 3. Before daybreak Caesar called a priest, who made the following announcement³ to the hostages in a loud voice. 4. "You (vōs), together with the Britons, once (ōlim)

¹ Compare 133, 9.

² Present infin. of *habēō*, *to have, to hold*.

³ Translate, *announced these things*.

conspired against the friends of the Roman people and prepared to lay waste their territory and to seize their towns. 5. Your glory among the Gauls was great, but you have been defeated by Caesar and your towns seized. 6. Now you have helped the Roman soldiers with a supply of grain; therefore he praises you (*vōs*) and will give your kings many rewards. 7. He is ready to help your allies, the Britons, a great number of whom were formerly in the friendship of the Roman people, and to be at peace with them." 8. Without delay Caesar's ambassadors carried this news¹ throughout Gaul and Britain; a great number of the Gauls and Britons were thus quickly pacified.

LESSON XVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

154 Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems

THE stems end in -l or -r, -n, and -s.

155 PARADIGMS

Cōnsul, m. *consul*. **Victor**, m. *victor*. **Homō**, m. and f. *man*.
cōnsul- **vīctōr-** **homin-**

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	cōnsul	vīctor	homō
GEN.	cōnsulis	vīctōris	hominis
DAT.	cōnsuli	vīctōrī	hominī
ACC.	cōnsulem	vīctōrem	hominem
ABL.	cōnsule	vīctōre	homine

¹ Haec.

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cōsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs
GEN.	cōsulūm	victōrum	hominūm
DAT.	cōsulibus	victōribus	hominibus
ACCU.	cōsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs
ABL.	cōsulibus	victōribus	hominibus

Nōmen, n. <i>name</i> .	Honor, m. <i>honor</i> .	Corpus, n. <i>body</i> .
nōmin-	honōs-	corpos-

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	nōmen	honor	corpus
GEN.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
DAT.	nōminī	honōrī	corporī
ACCU.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
ABL.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
GEN.	nōminum	honōrum	corporum
DAT.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus
ACCU.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
ABL.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus

(a) Notice that liquid stems like **cōsul-** and **victōr-** form the nominative singular without the case-ending.

(b) Notice also that nasal stems like **homin-** not only have no case-ending in the nominative singular, but drop the final **-n**; the nominative generally ends in **-ō**. This is true of almost all masculine and feminine nouns of this class. Neuter stems like **nōmin-** have the nominative like the stem, changing the final vowel from **i** to **e**.

(c) In the case of spirant stems like **honōs-** and **corpos-**, the **s** is always changed to **r** between two vowels, so that the stem seems to end in the liquid **r**. The nominative has no case-ending, but the nominatives of a few

common nouns of this class¹ have the *r* of the apparent stem; in neuters the last vowel, *e* or *o*, of the stem is regularly modified to *u* before *s*.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

156

EXAMPLES

1. **Amor patriae est māgnus.** *Love of country is great.*
2. **Timōre militum in oppidum properant.** *Because of their fear of the soldiers they are hurrying into the town.*
3. **Avidi laudis erant Galli.** *The Gauls were eager for praise.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the genitives *patriae*, *militum*, *laudis*, are the objects of the feelings expressed in the nouns *amor*, *timōre*, and the adjective *avidi*. Such a genitive is called an *Objective Genitive*. Compare the genitive of Possessor (35).

- 157 **Rule.**—The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives to denote the Object of the action or feeling implied in the word it modifies.

W. 351; B. 200. 204; AG. 217. 218; H. 440, 2. 450.

158

VOCABULARY

adpropinquō, -āre, to approach.	cōnsul, cōsulis, m. consul.
amor, amōris, m. love.	corpus, corporis, n. body.
apud, prep. with the accu. with, among.	homō, hominis, m. and f. human being, man.
arbor, arboris, f. tree.	honor, honōris, m. honor.
avidus, -a, -um, eager.	iter, itineris, n. journey, march, route.
clāmor, clāmōris, m. shout, noise (of shouting).	labor, labōris, m. work, labor.
	neque . . . neque, neither, nor.

¹ E. g., *arbor*, *f. tree*; *clāmor*, *m. shout*; *color*, *m. color*; *dolor*, *m. pain*.

nōmen, nōminis, n. *name*. **Vertiscus**, -i, m. *Vertiscus* (a
occultō, -āre, *to hide*. chieftain of the Remi).
pecus, **pecoris**, n. *flock*,¹ *herd* **victor**, **victōria**, m. *victor*
(*grex*, 144). (*victōria*, 111).
timor, **timōris**, m. *fear*.

- 159 1. Māgnus erat Rōmānīs militibus amor laudis.
2. Itaque ante lūcem sine morā māgnō militum clāmōre
et labōre ad mūrum Caesar cōsul properāvit. 3. Iter
erat per agrōs sociōrum, ubi arborēs erant multae et
māgnae. 4. Intereā Belgae, qui timōre Rōmānōrum
gregēs et pecora in silvis occultāverant, dēcertāre parā-
bant. 5. Belgae māgna corpora et longōs gladiōs habē-
bant; semper avidī laudis fuerant. 6. Sed apud Rēmōs
erat vir filiae rēgis, Vertiscus nōmine.² 7. Itaque ille vir,
princeps et dūx, amicus erat multōrum Belgārum et
māgnō in honōre erat apud cōsulem Rōmānum. 8. Eā
dē causā Caesar eum et comitēs eius celeriter vocāvit et
haec eis dē pāce per sacerdotem nuntiāvit. 9. "Belgae
sunt caput hūius bellī, sed neque odiō illōrum neque
praedae causā ad oppidum properāmus. 10. Belgae Ger-
mānos frūmentō et militibus contrā Rōmānōs iuvant; ab
eis agrī sociōrum nostrōrum vastantur. 11. Nunc prae-
mium hūius bellī est Rōmānīs laus māgna, illis vita;
victōres erimus."

- 160 1. The road to the town lay³ through the country of
the Haeduan. 2. In the fields were many men and many
herds with keepers. 3. The inhabitants were already
approaching the town with their wives and children
because of their fear of the Roman consul. 4. In the
meantime Caesar hastened by forced⁴ marches from the

¹ **Pecus** and **grex** are frequently used without distinction, but **pecus** is used particularly of small cattle, a flock of sheep, etc.

² *By name.*

³ *Was.*

⁴ Use the right case of **māgnus**.

camp to the town, which he attacked before dawn. 5. In the German's camp was a famous man, Ariovistus by name,¹ who had many friends among the allies of the Romans. 6. The Belgians had been victors, for they were helped by these men with grain and horses. 7. The Germans had brought a large number of trees, and with great labor had got ready a wall before the town. 8. They fought with great courage and from love of country.

LESSON XVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in -ī

161

MASCULINE AND FEMININE STEMS

PARADIGMS

Cīvis, m. *citizen*.
cīvi-

Hostis, m. and f.
enemy.
hosti-

Nūbēs, f. *cloud*.
nūbi-

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cīvis	hostis	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvis	hostis	nūbis
DAT.	cīvī	hostī	nūbī
ACCU.	cīvem	hostem	nūbem
ABL.	cīvī, -e	hoste	nūbe

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cīvēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvium	hostium	nūbium
DAT.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACCU.	cīvis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	nūbis, -ēs
ABL.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus

¹ Compare 159, 6.

(a) Notice that the singular of *hostis* and *nūbēs* differs from that of mute stems only in the nominative; but that the plural differs in the genitive and accusative.

(b) Not many nouns of frequent occurrence belong to this class; the most common of those declined like *civis* are *finis*, m. *end*, and *ignis*, m. *fire*; in the latter the ablative *ignī* is rare; *igne* is the common form.

(c) A few nouns have the accu. sing. ending in *-im*, abl. sing in *-ī*; these will be noted in the vocabularies.

162

NEUTER STEMS

Mare, n. *sea*.
mari-

Animal, n. *creature*.
animāli-

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	mare	animal
GEN.	maris	animālis
DAT.	mari	animāli
ACCU.	mare	animal
ABL.	mari	animāli

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	maria	animālia
GEN.	_____ ¹	animālium
DAT.	maribus	animālibus
ACCU.	maria	animālia
ABL.	maribus	animālibus

(a) Notice that neuter nouns of this class have only *-ī* in the ablative singular, and always *-ia* in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural.

¹ The genitive plural of *mare* is found but once, and then has the form *marum*.

163 To the class of *-ī* stems belong :

(1) Nouns of the third declension ending in *is* or *-ēs*, mostly feminine, or in *-e*, neuter, not increasing in the genitive.¹

(2) Neuters ending in *-al* and *-ar*.

164

VOCABULARY

animal, <i>animālis</i> , n. <i>living creature</i> .	hostis, hostis, m. and f. <i>enemy</i> .
caedēs, caedis, f. <i>slaughter</i> .	ignis, ignis, m. <i>fire</i> .
cīvis, cīvis, m. and f. <i>citizen</i> .	impetrō, -āre, <i>to obtain</i> (one's request).
clādēs, clādis, f. <i>loss, disaster</i> .	mare, maris, n. <i>sea</i> .
collis, collis, m. <i>hill</i> .	moenia, moenium, n. plu. <i>walls, ramparts</i> (of a town).
conlocō, -āre, <i>to place, to station</i> .	nūbēs, nūbis, f. <i>cloud</i> .
ē, ex, ² prep. with the abl. <i>out of, from</i> .	post, prep. with the accu. <i>after, behind</i> .
et . . . et, <i>both . . . and</i> .	-que, <i>and</i> . ³
finis, finis, m. <i>end</i> ; plu. <i>boundaries, territory</i> .	rogō, -āre, <i>to ask for</i> . ⁴
frāter, frātris, m. <i>brother</i> .	turris, turris, ⁵ f. <i>tower</i> .

165 1. Principēs eius cōsili et dūcēs hostium erant Germanī. 2. Inter Nervios is quī sacerdos iūdexque appellā-

¹ That is, having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative singular.

² *Ē* is used before consonants only; *ex* before both vowels and consonants. Compare *ā*, *ab*.

³ Always attached to the second of a pair of words: *terrā marique*, *on land and sea*. Compare *-ne*.

⁴ The thing asked for and the person from whom it is asked are both in the accusative: *cōnsulem auxilium rogant*, *they ask the consul for aid*.

⁵ Accu. sing. ends occasionally in *im*; 161, c.

bātur, māgnā vōce haec nūntiāvit. 3. "Hostēs iam et pecora et gregēs timōre militum nostrōrum in silvīs occultant." 4. Cōnsilium est rēgis, cūius frāter in amicitīā nostrā ōlim erat, civis contrā nostrōs¹ incitāre et oppidum oppugnāre. 5. Māgnus est eīs numerus equōrum, quibus celeriter et cum audāciā in nostrōs finis properāvērunt; iam moenibus adpropinquant. 6. Sed in nostris collibus parātī sunt ignēs, ante moenia sunt custōdēs; oppidum expugnāre nōn poterunt,² sed magna erit clādēs eōrum. 7. In vestris collibus, Germānī, sunt nova animālia, quōrum fāma apud Rōmānōs māgna est. 8. Turrēs, quae in colle post oppidum erant, iam nūbibus occultābantur. Itaque cōsul moenibus oppidī sine clāde adpropinquābat. 9. Ante lūcem pūgnātum est māgnā virtūte ā Rōmānis sociisque inter mare et castra. Hī ex oppidō in silvās māgnā caede fugātī sunt. 10. Itaque cōsulem Rōmānum auxilium et rogābunt et impetrābunt socii nostrī.

- 166 1. The cause of the war was hatred for both the king and his companions. 2. The king's brother was a leader and a chief among the Belgians, and had been greatly praised for his bravery and patriotism;³ he asked the Romans for help.⁴ 3. The enemy had prepared fires on the hills, and in company with the Germans were already hastening by forced marches into their territory. 4. The Nervii fought from the walls, but the enemy built towers on the hill which was behind the town. 5. The slaughter was not great, for the enemy fought with small spears, and the Nervii had swords.

¹ Used substantively, *our men, our soldiers*.

² The future indicative of *possum, can, be able*. What person and number is it?

³ Translate, *love of country*.

⁴ Compare 165, 10.

6. Quickly and fearlessly¹ the rest of the enemy approached over² the hills, which were already hidden by the clouds. 7. The Nervii were neighbors of those who had conspired together, and after the battle they entered their lands for plunder.

LESSON XIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

167

MIXED STEMS

PARADIGMS

Arx, f. *citadel*.
ar*e*(i)-

Urbs, f. *city*.
urb*i*(i)-

Cliēns, m. *client*.
cliēnt*i*(i)-

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	ar <i>x</i>	urb <i>s</i>	cliēn <i>s</i>
GEN.	ar <i>cis</i>	urb <i>is</i>	cliēnt <i>is</i>
DAT.	ar <i>cī</i>	urb <i>ī</i>	cliēnt <i>ī</i>
ACCU.	ar <i>cem</i>	urb <i>em</i>	cliēnt <i>em</i>
ABL.	ar <i>ce</i>	urb <i>e</i>	cliēnt <i>e</i>

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	ar <i>cēs</i>	urb <i>ēs</i>	cliēnt <i>ēs</i>
GEN.	ar <i>ciūm</i>	urb <i>ium</i>	cliēnt <i>ium</i>
DAT.	ar <i>cibus</i>	urb <i>ibus</i>	cliēnt <i>ibus</i>
ACCU.	ar <i>cēs, -is</i>	urb <i>ēs, -is</i>	cliēnt <i>ēs, -is</i>
ABL.	ar <i>cibus</i>	urb <i>ibus</i>	cliēnt <i>ibus</i>

¹ Translate, *without fear*.² Use *per*.

(a) Notice that these nouns are declined like consonant stems in the singular, but show the peculiarities of *i* stems in the plural. No sharp distinction can be made between nouns of this class and nouns like *hostis* and *nubēs* which are classed under *i* stems.

168 To the class of Mixed Stems belong :

(1) Most monosyllables in *-s* and *-x* preceded by a consonant, as *arx*, *urbs*, etc.

(2) Most nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*, as *cliēns*, *cohors*, etc.

169

VOCABULARY

arx, *arcis*, *f. citadel.*

civitās, *civitātis*,¹ *f. state, citizenship (civis, 164).*

cliēns, *clientis*, *m. client.*

cohors, *cohortis*, *f. cohort (a military body of 300-360 men).*

eques, *equitis*, *m. horseman (equus, 80).*

etiam, *adv. even.*

flūmen, *flūminis*, *n. river.*

fuga, *fugae*, *f. flight (fugō).*

gēns, *gentis*, *f. clan, family, tribe.*

legiō, *legiōnis*, *f. legion (a military body made up of ten cohortēs).*

mōns, *montis*, *m. mountain.*

mora, *mortis*, *f. death.*

nāvis,² *nāvis*, *f. ship (nāvigō, 56; nauta, 47).*

pōns, *pontis*, *m. bridge.*

quiēs, *quiētis*, *f. quiet, peace.*

ripa, *ripae*, *f. bank (of a stream).*

urbs, *urbis*, *f. city.*

170 1. Inter hostis erant multī quī clientēs populī Rōmānī ōlim fuerant. 2. Hī ex fugā in castra nostra errāverant, ubi eōs victor cōsul, Quintus nōmine,³ cum cūrā servābat

¹ Feminine nouns in *-ās*, *-ātis*, sometimes have the genitive plural in *-ium*, accusative plural in *-ēs*, *-īs*, like mixed stems; but for the present they are treated as consonant stems.

² Usually declined like *civis*, rarely like *turris*.

³ Compare 159, 6.

et obsidum locō¹ habēbat. 3. Eques rēgi eōrum, qui nōn longē ab eā urbe in colle aberat, cōnsilium hostium nūntiāvit. 4. Intereā cōsul clientēs Rōmānōrum in nāvibus celeriter ad ripam flūminis portāvit; ibi erat locus castris idōneus. 5. Māgnum numerum armōrum hūius bellī causā gentēs Germānōrum comparāverant et iam in finīs Gallōrum properābant. 6. Post arcem, quae in colle erat, hostēs māgnō labōre pontem parāverant; et ibi et in arce proelium exspectābant. 7. Māgna erit etiam in morte laus eōrum quī prō patriā cum audaciā dēcertāverunt. 8. Inter mare et montem in quō ignēs hostium erant, māgnā cum caede Gallōrum pūgnātum est. 9. Post rēgis mortem reliquī hostēs fugantur; haec cōsuli nūntiantur. Māgnō amōre praedae legiōnes Rōmānae ad ripam properant. 10. Iam neque quiēs neque pāx in Galliā erat, sed ab ōceanō marique ad flūmen Germānōrum bellum et arma.

- 171 1. The states of Gaul were aroused to war by their hatred of the Roman citizens. These with their² clients were in the Gauls' cities and towns. 2. Therefore the consul, whose name was Quintus,³ together with his² brother, hastened by forced marches into Gaul. 3. He did not have many horsemen, but he got ready towers in a suitable place on a hill. 4. Many ships had been built by the allies of the Roman people, and these were not far away. 5. The enemy had many fires on the hills and mountains, and they awaited the battle and death with great courage. 6. The slaughter was great, both of the

¹ locō, abl. *in place of* = *as*.

² Omit.

³ This may be translated as in 170, 2; we may also say *cui* (dat. of possessor) *nōmen erat Quīntō* or *cui nōmen erat Quīntus*. The predicate dative *Quīntō*, agreeing with *cui*, is more common than the predicate nominative *Quīntus*, agreeing with *nōmen*.

Romans and of those who were fighting bravely for their¹ country. 7. The Gauls were conquered, but the Romans, though victorious,² did not lay waste their lands.

LESSON XX

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

RULES FOR GENDER

172 THE following rules will help to fix the gender of a majority of the nouns of the Third Declension, but it is important and easy to learn the gender of each noun when it is first met.

(1) Masculine are nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs (gen. -itis, -idis): *ōrdō*, *order*, *rank*, *vīctor*, *mōs*, *custom*, *agger*, *mound*, *eques*, etc.

(2) Feminine are nouns in -ās, -ēs (gen. -is), -is; -x and -s (after a consonant); -dō, and collective and abstract nouns in -iō: *civitās*, *nūbēs*, *nāvis*, *arx*, *urbs*, *multitūdō*, *legiō*.

(3) Neuter are nouns in -e, -l, -n, -t; -us: *mare*, *animal*, *nōmen*, *caput*, *corpus*.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME

173

EXAMPLES

1. *Tōtam aestātem labōrat.* *He works the entire summer.*
2. *Septem noctēs continuās* *He attacked the town for*
oppidum oppugnābat. *seven nights in succession.*

¹ Omit.² Though victorious, simply *vīctōrēs*.

(a) Notice that in these sentences the accusatives *tōtam aestātem*, *septem noctēs continuās* answer the question *How long?* That is, they express the time during which the action of the verb continues. Such an accusative is called an *Accusative of Duration of Time*.

- 174 **Rule.**—Duration of Time is expressed by the Accusative.
W. 324; B. 181; AG. 256; H. 417.

ABLATIVE OF TIME

175

EXAMPLES

1. *Hieme noctēs sunt longae.* *In winter the nights are long.*
2. *Primā lūce hostēs oppidum oppugnābunt.* *At daybreak the enemy will attack the town.*
3. *Septem proximis annis Gallōs pācāvit.* *Within the last seven years he has subdued the Gauls.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *hieme*, *primā lūce*, *septem proximis annis*, answer the questions *When?* *Within what time?* Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Time At Which or Within Which*.

- 176 **Rule.**—The Time At Which or Within Which an action takes place is expressed by the Ablative.

W. 406. 407; B. 230. 231; AG. 256; H. 486. 487.

177

VOCABULARY

<i>aestās</i> , -ātis, ¹ f. <i>summer</i> .	<i>hiems</i> , -mis, f. <i>winter</i> .
<i>annus</i> , -i, m. <i>year</i> .	<i>hōra</i> , -ae, f. <i>hour</i> .
<i>cōfirmō</i> , -āre, to make firm, establish.	<i>nox</i> , noctis, f. <i>night</i> .
<i>continuus</i> , -a, -um, consecutive, in succession.	<i>primus</i> , -a, -um, <i>first</i> .
<i>hiemō</i> , -āre, to spend the winter.	<i>proximus</i> , -a, -um, <i>nearest</i> , <i>last</i> .
	<i>septem</i> , indeclinable, ² <i>seven</i> .
	<i>septimus</i> , -a, -um, <i>seventh</i> .

¹ Hereafter the entire form of the genitive will not be given, but only so much as is necessary to show the declension.

² That is, having the same form for all genders and cases.

tertius, -a, -um, third. trāns, prep. with accu.
tōtus,¹ -a, -um, whole, en- across.
tire. vigilia, -ae, f. watch.

- 178** 1. Tertiā vigiliā cōsulis frāter, cui nōmen erat Marcō,² equitēs et legiōnēs in colle proximō conlocāvit ubi hostīs expectābat. 2. Hī nocte per finis Nerviōrum celeriter properāvērunt et primā lūce nōn longē ab castrīs Rōmānōrum aberant. 3. Coniugēs et liberī Gallōrum hīs proximīs noctibus in oppidis et urbibus conlocāti³ erant. 4. Septem hōrās continuās ab Rōmānīs et ab Gallīs māgnā cum caede pūgnābātur. 5. Hostēs superāti sunt et obsidēs dabant; sed ab reliquīs Gallīs semper māgnoperē laudābantur. 6. Pāx cōfirmāta est septimā aestāte inter eōs Gallōs qui in armīs erant et Rōmānōs; iam multōs annōs per Galliam quiēs fuerat. 7. Haec victōria Rōmānōrum cēteris Gallīs et Germānīs ab eīs gentibus, quae finitimae erant, māgnō clāmōre nūntiāta erat. 8. Post multōs annōs gentēs Germāniae bellum contrā victōrēs Rōmānōs parābant; septem noctēs continuās ignēs in montibus collibusque vidēbantur.⁴ 9. Sed tōtam proximam hiemem cōsul Rōmānus cum septem cohortibus apud Gallōs hiemāverat. 10. Iam frāter cōsulis cum legiōnibus tertiā et septimā⁵ māgnīs itineribus ex Ītaliā ad cōsulem in Galliam properābat.

- 179** 1. The third summer Caesar hastened into the territory of the Belgians and stationed his cohorts on the

¹ The genitive singular of all genders is *tōtius*, dative singular *tōtī*; otherwise *tōtus* is declined like *bonus*. Compare the declension of *hic, ille*, etc. ² Compare 171, 2, foot-note.

³ When a predicate adjective or participle agrees with two or more nouns of different genders, it is Masculine when the nouns denote persons, and Neuter when the nouns denote things.

⁴ *Were seen.* From *videō, to see*; the principal parts and the conjugation will be given later.

⁵ Agreeing with *legiōnibus*. Why is the noun plural when the adjectives are singular?

mountains and hills. 2. He strengthened the courage¹ of the soldiers by his² words.³ 3. Many men, clients of the Romans, hurried to him from the neighboring tribes and states and brought arms and hostages. 4. The leading men of the enemy were called together on that night; they were without a plan for the war. 5. Among them were many who once had been greatly praised by the Romans for their courage. 6. During the night the king of the Belgians with his attendants brought a large quantity of arms into camp. 7. The Romans and the Belgians fought in the plain between the hills for seven hours; the Belgians⁴ were driven⁵ into their camp.

180

READING EXERCISE

The Beginning of the Republic

Post rēgēs cōsulēs duo⁶ prō rēge ūnō⁷ creati sunt,⁸ quibus annuum⁹ imperium¹⁰ civitātis datum est. Primō annō cōsulēs fuērunt Lūcius Iunius Brūtus, quī rēgem Tarquiniū expulerat,¹¹ et Tarquinius Collātinus. Sed nōmen Tarquiniōrum populō Rōmānō nōn erat grātum; itaque cum coniuge, liberis, servisque omnia¹² bona¹³ ex urbe ad finitimōs portāvit, et in eius locum Valerius Publicola cōsul est creatus. Sed iam ille Tarquinius, quī rēx fuerat, bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābat. In primō proeliō Brūtus cōsul occidit,¹⁴ quem Rōmānae mātṛōnae¹⁵ per totum annum luxērunt.¹⁶ Posterō¹⁷ annō Tarquinius

¹ animus.² Omit.³ verbum, -ī.⁴ Translate by a pronoun.⁵ Put to flight.⁶ Two.⁷ One.⁸ creō, -āre, to elect.⁹ An adjective; compare annus.¹⁰ Rule.¹¹ Had driven out.¹² All.¹³ Neut. plur. used substantively, goods.¹⁴ Fell.¹⁵ What English word is derived from this?¹⁶ Mourned.¹⁷ The next.

cum Rōmānīs iterum¹ armīs dēcertāvit et Porsenna, rēx Etruscōrum, eī auxilium dedit. In hōc bellō Horātius sōlus² pontem servāvit, dum³ is ab Rōmānīs ruptus esset.⁴ Dēnique Porsenna pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit⁵; Tarquinius post nōn multōs annōs in villā mortuus est.⁶

LESSON XXI

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD
DECLENSION

181

PARADIGMS

Audāx, *bold*.**audāci-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācis		audācium	
DAT.	audāci		audācibus	
ACCU.	audācem	audāx	audācis, -ēs	audācia
ABL.	audāci		audācibus	

Fortis, *brave*.**forti-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
GEN.	fortis		fortium	
DAT.	forti		fortibūs	
ACCU.	fortem	forte	fortis, -ēs	fortia
ABL.	forti		fortibus	

¹ *Again*.² *Alone*.³ *Until*.⁴ Plup. subj. pass., *had been broken down*.⁵ *Made*.⁶ *Died*.

Ācer, *sharp, eager, spirited.*

ācri-

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACCU.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācris, -ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(a) Notice that these adjectives are all declined like **i** stems.¹

(b) Adjectives declined like **audāx**, which has but one form for all genders in the nominative singular, are called *Adjectives of One Termination*; those declined like **fortis**, **forte**, *Adjectives of Two Terminations*; and those declined like **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *Adjectives of Three Terminations*.

182

VOCABULARY

ācer , ācris , ācre , <i>sharp, eager, spirited.</i>	equester , equestris , equestre , <i>belonging to the cavalry,</i>
armō , -āre , <i>to arm (arma,</i>	equestrian (equus , 80,
111).	equus , 169).
audāx , -ācia , <i>bold (audācia,</i>	fortis , forte , <i>strong, brave.</i>
151).	ita , <i>adv. so, thus, in this</i>
brevis , breve , <i>short.</i>	<i>manner.</i>
dimicō , -āre , <i>to fight, con-</i>	iuventūs , -tūtis , <i>f. the period</i>
<i>tend (compare pūgnō,</i>	<i>of youth, youth, young</i>
101).*	<i>men.</i>

¹ Adjectives of one termination sometimes have the abl. sing. ending in **-e** instead of **-ī**, but this is not common in prose of the classical period.

Compare the declension of these adjectives with that of the nouns in 161 and 162.

<i>omnis, omne, all, whole.</i>	<i>tempus, -oris, n. time.</i>
<i>pars, -tis, f. part.</i>	<i>velox, -ocia, swift.</i>
<i>quartus, -a, -um, fourth.</i>	<i>vulnus, -eris, n. wound (vul-</i>
<i>studium, -i, n. zeal, desire.</i>	<i>nerō, 144).</i>

183 1. Omnēs Belgae, quī in tertiā parte Galliae habitābant, cum finitimīs gentibus et cīvitātibus brevī tempore coniūrābant. 2. Eō tempore hiemābat Caesar cum quartā legiōne in eā parte Galliae quae Italiae proxima est; dē Belgārum cōnsiliō eī per epistulās nūntiātum est. 3. Caesar, ubi (*when*) brevī tempore cōpiam frūmentī comparāvit, finibus Belgārum adpropinquāvit. 4. Cum omnibus equitibus et novīs cohortibus iuventūtis, quās ex urbibus Italiae vocāverat, contrā hostis properābat; in itinere cōpiās Gallōrum equestri proeliō fugāvit. 5. Rēmī, quī ex Belgīs proximī Gallis sunt, nōn longē aberant cum primīs cīvitātis clientibusque eōrum; auxilium contrā inimicōs rogāverunt. 6. Apud Belgās erat magna inopia omnium; neque arma neque equōs neque cōpiam frūmentī habēbant. 7. Sed Germānī, quī audācēs fortēsque erant, iam multōs continuōs annōs cum Rōmānīs dimicāverant. 8. Ante proelium quod exspectābat Caesar, animōs militum ita cōfirmāvit: "Vestra erit laus victōriae; sed hostibus vulnera et mors." 9. Velōcēs ācrēsque erant Belgae quī longīs hastīs armātī erant; magnō cum studiō bellī tōtam noctem dimicābant.

184 1. At that time Caesar's lieutenant was in Gaul, and hostages were given him by all the tribes. 2. In the next winter the bold Gauls for many reasons prepared for¹ a new war against the Romans. 3. When² all the

¹ Prepare for, parō, -āre.

² Use ubi and the perfect indicative; compare sentence 3 above. Ubi means both *where* and *when*; it will be used in both senses in the following lessons.

arms had been brought from the town, Caesar hurried with the eager cavalry and the brave cohorts into the lands of the neighboring tribe. 4. These men were brave and bold, but owing to their fear of the Roman soldiers they were ready to fight neither at that time nor in that place. 5. Their cavalry forces were not great, but they had placed all their young men on a hill which was not far distant. 6. The Romans' horses, of which there was a great number in camp, were swift and spirited.

LESSON XXII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

- 185** ADJECTIVES are compared in three Degrees, as in English—the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding *-ior* m. and f., *-ius* n., and the Superlative by adding *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um* to the stem of the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus (alto-)	alt-ior	alt-issimus
fortis (forti-)	fort-ior	fort-issimus ¹
audāx (audāc-)	audāc-ior	audāc-issimus

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

- 186** Comparatives are declined as follows:

¹ Notice that the final vowel of the stem of the Positive, if it have any, as in *alto-*, *forti-*, is dropped before the endings *-ior*, *-issimus*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
GEN.	fortiōris		fortiōrum	
DAT.	fortiōrī		fortiōribus	
ACCU.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs ¹	fortiōra
ABL.	fortiōre ¹		fortiōribus	

(a) Compare this declension of the Comparative with that of the Positive of adjectives of the Third Declension, 181, and notice the points of difference carefully.

187 Superlatives are all declined like *bonus*, 62.

188 Compare: *cārus*, *clārus*, *brevis*, *trīstis*, *velōx*.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

189

EXAMPLES

1. *Marcus est clārior quam frāter.* *Marcus is more famous than his brother.*
2. *Marcus est frātre clārior.* *Marcus is more famous than his brother.*
3. *Quid est bonō cīvī cārius quam patria?* *What is dearer to a good citizen than his native land?*
4. *Quid est bonō cīvī patriā cārius?* *What is dearer to a good citizen than his native land?*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the person or thing with which the subject of each sentence is compared is either in the same case as the subject and connected by the conjunction *quam*, *than*, or is expressed by the simple Ablative. Such an Ablative is called the *Ablative of Comparison*.

¹ The endings -ī in the Ablative Singular and -īs in the Accusative Plural occur, but are rare.

(b) This Ablative can be used only when the first of the things compared is in the nominative or accusative; when the first of the two things compared is in any other case **quam** must be used: e. g., **cārior Horātiō quam servō est ille locus.** *That place is dearer to Horace than to his slave.*

- 190** **Rule.**—The Ablative of Comparison is used after the nominative or accusative of Comparatives.

W. 380, 381; B. 217; AG. 247; H. 471.

191

VOCABULARY

altus , -a, -um, <i>high, deep.</i>	māter , -tris, f. <i>mother.</i>
atrōx , -cis, <i>savage, frightful.</i>	mulier , -eris, f. <i>woman.</i>
certus , -a, -um, <i>certain, sure.</i>	pater , -tris, m. <i>father.</i>
dūrus , -a, -um, <i>hard, difficult.</i>	pēs , pedis , m. <i>foot.</i>
egēns , -ntis, <i>lacking, needy.</i>	quam , conj. <i>than.</i>
gravis , -e, <i>heavy, severe.</i>	timidus , -a, -um, <i>timid (timor, 158).</i>
imperō , -āre, <i>to order.</i> ¹	tristis , -e, <i>sad.</i>
	tūtus , -a, -um, <i>safe.</i>

- 192** 1. Belgae sunt fortiōrēs et audāciōrēs quam eī Galli quī Rōmānis finitimī sunt. 2. Nam cum Germānis, quī nōn longē absunt, saepe dūrissimō tempore annī dīmicant. 3. Multis dē causīs eā aestāte gravius et atrōcius bellum in hāc parte Galliae exspectābātur. 4. Mōns ubi Caesar iuventūtem et equestris cōpiās conlocāvit, altior erat eō colle quem hostēs occupāverant. 5. Puerōs omnis et mulierēs timidiōrēs in altis silvis occultāverant hostēs, ubi tūtiōrēs erant quam in arce. 6. Belgis erat in animō² timidōs cōfirmāre, egentis iuvāre, omnis contrā

¹ With the dat. of person and the accu. of thing, *to order to furnish*: eīs obsidēs imperāvit. *He ordered them to furnish hostages.*

² esse in animō with the dative of possessor, *to have in mind, plan, intend.*

Rōmānōs incitāre, patriam liberāre. 7. Multī obsidēs in castris Caesaris et in Italiā erant, inter quōs erant frātrēs, filiī, filiaeque principum civitātis. 8. Sed tertiā vigiliā noctis hostēs celeriter et māgnō cum studiō proeli moenibus adpropinquāvērunt; ibi diū pūgnātum est, sed victōria erat Rōmānis certa. 9. Post id bellum ante pedēs Caesaris Belgae trīstissimī amicitiam eius et populī Rōmānī postulābant. 10. Iam hiems adpropinquābat; itaque Caesar eis obsidēs, patrēs et mātērēs, imperāvit.

- 193** 1. Of all the states of Gaul, this was the bravest and most eager for war. 2. The enemy had many horses which were swifter and more spirited than those belonging to¹ the Romans. 3. In the first watch of the night the Romans approached the town, the wall of which was very high. 4. But at daybreak the enemy were defeated in a hard battle with the cavalry² in a broad plain before the town. 5. The consul ordered the Gauls to furnish³ many hostages, among whom were the fathers and the sons of the leading men of the state. 6. Caesar intended⁴ to get ready a large number of ships in the winter and to carry his soldiers to Britain the following summer. 7. All the neighboring tribes of Britain hastened to the sea by the shortest road and prepared to fight with the Romans.

¹ *Belonging to*: translate by the possessive genitive.

² *With the cavalry*: translate by an adjective.

³ Compare 192, 10.

⁴ Compare 192, 6.

LESSON XXIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

- 194 ADJECTIVES ending in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the Nominative of the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rimus
acer	acr-ior	acer-rimus

In the same way compare *miser*, *liber*.

- 195 Six adjectives in *-ilis* form the Superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem of the Positive less its final vowel:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis , <i>easy</i>	facil-ior	facil-limus
difficilis , <i>difficult</i>	difficil-ior	difficil-limus
similis , <i>like</i>	simil-ior	simil-limus
dissimilis , <i>unlike</i>	dissimil-ior	dissimil-limus
humilis , <i>low</i>	humil-ior	humil-limus
gracilis , <i>slender</i>	gracil-ior	gracil-limus

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

196

EXAMPLES

1. **Paulō post adpropinquāvit cōsul.** *A little later the consul approached.*
2. **Haec via est multō difficilior.** *This way is much more difficult.*
3. **Ille turris decem pedibus est altior quam mūrus.** *That tower is ten feet higher than the wall.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **paulō**, **multō**, **decem pedibus** answer the questions "*How much later, more difficult, higher?*" Such an Ablative is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

197 Rule.—The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with Comparatives and words suggesting comparison.¹

W. 393; B. 223; AG. 250; H. 479.

198

VOCABULARY

beātus , -a, -um, <i>happy</i> .	multō , <i>much</i> . ²
celer , -eris, -ere, <i>swift</i> .	nēmō , nēminis , m. <i>no one</i> .
decem (indeclinable), <i>ten</i> .	nihil , n. (indeclin.), <i>nothing</i> .
difficilis , -e, <i>difficult</i> .	ōrdō , -inis, m. <i>order, rank</i> .
dissimilis , -e, <i>unlike</i> .	paulō , <i>little</i> . ²
facilis , -e, <i>easy</i> .	similis , -e, <i>like</i> .
humilis , -e, <i>low</i> .	vīginti (indeclin.), <i>twenty</i> .
insignis , -e, <i>remarkable, prominent</i> .	

199 1. Eī Belgae, quī Germānis³ sunt nōn dissimilēs, multō fortiōrēs sunt quam reliquī hūius nōminis. 2. Illi decem ante⁴ annīs superāverant cōsulem Rōmānum, quī per eōrum agrōs cum cōpiis properābat. 3. Quā dē causā Caesar primā aestāte cum equitibus celerrimis in eam partem Galliae properāverat. 4. Eō tempore nāvēs Rōmānōrum paulō altiōrēs erant quam eae quās Belgae habēbant, sed humiliōrēs quam eae quae nunc in nostrō mari sunt. 5. Multō facilius erat Belgīs, quōrum in finibus erant

¹ The most common words suggesting comparison are the adverbs **ante**, *before*, **post**, *afterward*, and the verb **mālō**, *to prefer* (487).

² **Multō** and **paulō** are originally the ablatives singular neuter of the adjectives **multus** and **paulus**; they are, however, generally called adverbs.

³ Dative

⁴ **Ante** is here an adverb and has no influence on the ablative.

multae arborēs, nāvis aedificāre. 6. Insigni studiō omnium ōrdinum per vīginti diēs¹ continuōs Belgae laborābant; multās navīs celeriorēs altiōresque aedificāvērunt. 7. Simili studiō cum militibus nostris diū pūgnāvērunt, sed septimā hōrā ad ripās sunt fugāti. 8. Nihil homini fortī bōnōque pulchrius est quam prō patriā mori; ² nēmō beātiōr est quam is quī coniugis et liberōrum causā fortiter dimicat. 9. Pōns, quem trāns flūmen aedificāvit Caesar, lātiōr septem pedibus erat quam via. 10. Quiēs longa fuerat eā nocte in oppidō Belgārum, sed paulō ante lūcem magnō cum clāmōre ad castra Rōmānōrum prope-rāvērunt hostēs.

- 200** 1. For many reasons Caesar prepared to hurry into Gaul by a more difficult way. 2. The tribe, whose territory he was approaching, was much braver than the rest of the Gauls. 3. Their horses were much swifter and more spirited than those of the Romans. 4. These tribes were most like the Germans,³ who lived across the very wide river. 5. Caesar took possession of all their towns and stationed the bravest troops on the neighboring hills. 6. A little while after, the enemy approached with all their forces, but were defeated and put to flight in a severe cavalry battle. 7. The Gauls' ships were very unlike⁴ the Romans'; the former were shorter and broader, the latter longer and higher.

¹ Accu. plur. of *diēs*, *day*.

² Infinitive, *to die*.

³ Compare 199, 1.

⁴ *Very unlike*, superlative.

LESSON XXIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

- 201 THE following adjectives are irregular in Comparison, the Comparative and Superlative being formed from different stems than the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	pēior	pessimus
māgnus	māior	māximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus

- 202 Plūs is defective in declension:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	_____	plūris	plūrium	
DAT.	_____	_____	plūribus	
ACCU.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	_____	plūre	plūribus	

- 203 The following have no Positive:

POSITIVE (wanting)	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(Compare prae , <i>before</i>)	prior , <i>former</i>	primus , <i>first</i>
“ citrā , <i>this side of</i>)	citerior , <i>hither</i>	citimus , <i>hithermost</i>
“ ultrā , <i>beyond</i>)	ulterior , <i>farther</i>	ultimus , <i>farthest, last</i>
“ in , intrā , <i>in, within</i>)	interior , <i>inner</i>	intimus , <i>inmost</i>
“ prope , <i>near</i>)	propior , <i>nearer</i>	proximus , <i>nearest, next</i>

204 The Positive of the following is rare:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(posterī) ¹	posterior, later	{ postrēmus, latest, last postumus, late-born
(exterī)	exterior, outer	{ extrēmus } { extimus, } outermost
(inferī)	inferior, lower	{ infimus } { imus, } lowest
(superī)	superior, higher	{ suprēmus, last summus, highest

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

205

EXAMPLES

1. Amicōs cūrā liberāvit. *He freed his friends from care.*
2. Oppidānōs armis privābunt. *They will deprive the townsmen of their arms.*
3. Locus militibus vacuus erat. *The place was free of soldiers.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Ablatives *cūrā*, *armis*, *militibus* express that from which one is separated or that which he is without. Such an Ablative is called an *Ablative of Separation*.

206

Rule.—The Ablative of Separation is used with verbs and adjectives meaning to relieve, deprive, need, lack, etc.

W. 374-377; B. 214; AG. 243; H. 461-465.

(a) Verbs of freeing, depriving, lacking, and removing are ordinarily used with the simple ablative, unless

¹ The positive of these adjectives is rare save *posterus* in such phrases as *posterō diē*, *on the next day*; *posterō annō*, *in the next year*. The plurals *posterī*, *descendants*, *inferī*, *the inhabitants of the lower world*, *the dead*, *superī*, *the gods above*, are also fairly common.

a person is meant; then the ablative with a preposition is used: e. g., *civitātem ā rēge liberat*.

(b) Verbs compounded with the prefixes *ab-*, *dis-*, *sē-* usually have the ablative with a preposition: e. g., *Rōma longē abest ab hōc locō*, *Rome is far distant from this place*; *Britanni differunt ā Gallis*, *The Britons differ from the Gauls*.

207

VOCABULARY¹

altitūdō , -inis, f. <i>height</i> .	spoliō , -āre, <i>to despoil of</i> .
levis , -e, <i>light, slight</i> .	vacuus , -a, -um, <i>empty of</i> ,
privō , -āre, <i>to deprive of</i> .	<i>free from</i> .
secundus , -a, -um, <i>favorable</i> ,	vēr , vēris , n. <i>spring</i> .

following.

208

1. Tōtam eam hiemem Caesar in citeriōre Galliā omnibus cum cōpiis hiemābat. 2. Paulō ante primum vēr cum decem cohortibus et multis equestribus cōpiis in ulteriōrem Galliam properāvit et in eās civitātēs quae mari propiōrēs erant. 3. Itinera difficillima erant dūrissimō tempore annī et altitūdine montium quae inter Galliam et Italiā sunt. 4. Caesar cum septem cohortibus omnia superiōra loca occupāvit, sed equitēs nōn longē ab infimō monte² conlocāvit. 5. Clientēs civium Rōmānōrum et omnis quī nātūrā timidiōrēs erant armīs privābant hostēs. 6. Posterō diē³ levī et secundō proeliō equestri in campō dimicātum est. 7. Hōc proeliō et eō quod posterō diē pūgnātum est, Caesar civis Rōmānōs et sociōs māximō periculō et timōre liberāvit. 8. Hī Galli multō ācriōrēs erant quam eī quōs Caesar priōre aestāte similī caede

¹ From this point the new words used in paradigms are ordinarily not repeated in the vocabularies, as has been done hitherto. Pupils should therefore carefully learn the meaning of each new paradigm.

² *Infimus mōns*, the foot of the mountain; *summus mōns*, the top of the mountain.

³ Ablative sing. of *diēs*, day.

superāverat. 9. Nam in extrēmīs finibus Gallōrum habitābant et longē aberant ā Germānis, quī timōre vacuī erant. 10. Eī quī superātī erant armīs spoliābantur et in agrīs victōrum labōrābant.

- 209** 1. At the beginning of spring¹ Caesar prepared to carry his troops from farther Gaul into Britain by means of ships. 2. In the previous summer he had put to flight a tribe of the Britons and had deprived them of their arms. 3. He stationed ten cohorts in those parts which were nearer the sea,² and a little after the third watch hastened toward the enemy. 4. The enemy's spears were a foot longer than those of the Romans', but their shields were a little smaller than the Romans'. 5. The enemy were overcome in a slight cavalry battle and were driven in flight³ into a neighboring wood. 6. The inner part of Britain was inhabited by very savage tribes, who were free from all fear. 7. But the hither part was inhabited by those who had taken possession of the country for the sake of war and plunder.

LESSON XXV

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

- 210** Most adverbs are derived from adjective stems:

ADJECTIVES

longus (longo-)
miser (misero-)

ADVERBS

longē, far (132)
miserē, wretchedly

¹ Compare sentence 2 above.

² Use dative.

³ fugō.

(a) Notice that these Adverbs are formed from stems of Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions by changing the final vowel of the stem -o to -ē.

211

ADJECTIVES

ācer (ācri-)

audāx (audāc-)

fortis (forti-)

sapiēns (sapiēt-)

ADVERBS

ācritēr, *sharply*audactēr, *boldly*fortitēr, *bravely*sapiētēr, *wisely*

(a) Notice that these Adverbs are formed from stems of Adjectives of the Third Declension by the addition of -ter; if the adjective stem end in -nt, the -t is dropped.

212 Accusative or Ablative neuters singular of Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs: e. g., multum, *much*; facile, *easily*; tūtō, *safely*; subitō, *suddenly*; multō, (*by*) *much*; paulō, (*by*) *little*.

213 Adverbs follow the Comparison of the Adjectives from which they are derived:

POSITIVE

longē

miserē

ācritēr

audactēr

fortitēr

sapiētēr

facile

tūtō

COMPARATIVE

long-ius

miser-ius

ācr-ius

audāc-ius

fort-ius

sapiēt-ius

facil-ius

tūt-ius

SUPERLATIVE

long-issimē

miser-rimē

ācer-rimē

audāc-issimē

fort-issimē

sapiēt-issimē

facil-limē

tūt-issimē

(a) Notice that the Comparative of the Adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the Adjective, and that the Superlative is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective in the same way as the Positive of the Adverb from the Positive of the Adjective.

- 214 The following common Adverbs are irregular in Comparison :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene , <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male , <i>ill</i>	pēius	pessimē
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
parum , (<i>too</i>) <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū , <i>long</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe , <i>often</i>	saepius	saepiissimē
	magis , ¹ <i>more</i>	māximē

- 215 Form and compare adverbs from *laetus*, *glad*; *levis*, *light*; *atrōx*, *savage*, *cruel*.

216 VOCABULARY

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province*. **postea**, adv. *afterward*.
impedimentum, -ī, n. *hindrance*; plur. *baggage*. **fēliciter**, *happily*, with good fortune.
adsum, -esse, -fui, *to be present* (75).

- 217 1. Subitō primō vēre aderat ex ultimā parte prōvinciae ille lēgātus, quī dē atrōciōre bellō nūntiāvit. 2. Bene et fēliciter ā militibus nostris priōre aestāte decem continuās hōrās dīmicitum erat contrā rēgem Belgārum. 3. Ācerrimē coniugum liberōrumque causā eō tempore Galli pugnāverant et nēmō audācius quam rēx ille. 4. Hōc vēre Caesar cum multis legiōnibus nōn longē aberat. Itaque et facilius et celerius quam priōre aestāte militēs ad impedimenta properābant. 5. Ibi cōsul egentis cūrābat, eōs quī armis spoliāti erant laetē armāvit, et postea pontem fēcit² paulō altiōrem et septem pedibus longiōrem quam priōrem. 6. Summōs³ collis et loca magis idōnea

¹ Some adjectives and adverbs are compared with **magis**, **māximē**: e. g., **idōneus**, **magis idōneus**, **māximē idōneus**.

² Perf. indic. of **faciō**, *to make*.

³ Compare 208, 4.

sapienter occupāvit et posterā nocte cum primis hostium ordinibus audācter pūgnāre parāvit. 7. Equi eōrum multō velōciōrēs ācriōrēsque erant quam nostrī et laetē hostibus adpropinquābant. 8. Inter omnis eās gentēs māxima laus est hostis armis spoliāre; quae postea deis deabusque laetissimē dant. 9. Proximis annis Caesar fēliciter māximam partem Galliae pācāverat; quīntō annō milites in Britanniam nāvibus tūtō portāvit. 10. Britannī quī ad mare subitō properāverant, ācritē ab militibus Rōmānis fugātī sunt.

- 218 1. In former years the Gauls had fought more bravely than the Germans. 2. But at this time the Germans were much more savage than the Gauls and fought more boldly. 3. When Caesar came near, the Germans quickly concealed their women and children in the neighboring forest. 4. This forest was very large, and it was not easy to march¹ through it very quickly. 5. Caesar stationed his forces not far from the forest and waited for the enemy seven nights. 6. At the farther end of the bridge there were towers many feet higher than the enemy's towers. 7. But the highest towers were on the top of the hill; here Caesar wisely stationed seven cohorts of his best troops. 8. The horsemen of the Germans approached very quickly, but because of the height of the walls, they did not capture the town.

219

READING EXERCISE

Wars with the Gauls

Ubi Galli, gēns nātūrā atrōx, quī moenibus urbis adpropinquābant, Rōmānōs ad Alliam flūmen māgnā caede superāvērunt—quae clādēs semper erat Rōmānis trīstissima—, Rōmam etiam occupāvērunt. Nulla² erant

¹ To march, iter facere.

² nūllus, -a, -um, none, no. Declined like tōtus, 177.

praesidia; nihil potuerunt¹ civēs. Cum iuventūte, cuius numerus nōn erat magnus, dūx Manlius arcem defendit.² Ubi praesidium in summā fame³ fuit et Manlius pacem ā Gallis maximis praemiis emere⁴ voluit,⁵ subito Camillus hostis atrōcī proeliō superāvit.

Post multōs annōs Galli iterum ad urbem accesserant⁶ et quartō milliariō⁷ trāns Anienem⁸ flūmen castra posuerunt.⁹ Contrā eōs properābat Titus Quinctius. Ibi Gallus magnō corpore fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad certāmen¹⁰ singulāre¹¹ provocāvit.¹² Manlius cum barbarō statim decertāvit, eum facile occidit¹³ spoliāvitque torque¹⁴ aureō.¹⁵ Quā dē causā et Manlius et omnēs posterī Torquātī appellātī sunt. Iterum in Pomptinō agrō¹⁶ Valerius in similī pūgnā sacrā ālite¹⁷ corvō¹⁸ adiūtus¹⁹ spolia²⁰ cēpit; ²¹ itaque hīc quoque est Corvinus appellātus. Post aliquot²² annōs in Etruriā reliquōs Gallōs imperātor Rōmānus delēvit;²³ ex eā gente quae Rōmam incenderat,²⁴ nēmō effūgit.²⁵

¹ *Could (do).*

² *Defended.*

³ *famēs, -is, f. hunger, famine.*

⁴ *To buy.*

⁵ *Wished.*

⁶ *Had approached.*

⁷ *Mile-stone.*

⁸ *Aniō, -ēnis, m. a stream north of Rome.*

⁹ *Pitched.*

¹⁰ *Combat.*

¹¹ *singulāris, -e, single.*

¹² *Challenged.*

¹³ *Killed.*

¹⁴ *torquis, -is, m. necklace.*

¹⁵ *Golden.*

¹⁶ *Pomptinus ager, a district in Latium.*

¹⁷ *āles, -itis, f. bird.*

¹⁸ *corvus, -i, m. raven.*

¹⁹ *Perf. pass. partic. (adiuvō), aided.*

²⁰ *Spoils, compare spoliō.*

²¹ *emptying into the Tiber a few miles*

²² *Gained.*

²³ *Some.*

²⁴ *Destroyed.*

²⁵ *Had burned.*

²⁶ *Escaped.*

LESSON XXVI

FOURTH OR -ŭ DECLENSION

Stem in u

PARADIGMS

220

Manus, f. *hand*.**Cornū**, n. *horn*.**manu-****cornu-**

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	manus	cornū
GEN.	manūs	cornūs
DAT.	manui , -ū	cornū
ACCU.	manum	cornū
ABL.	manū	cornū

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	manūs	cornua
GEN.	manuum	cornuum
DAT.	manibus	cornibus
ACCU.	manūs	cornua
ABL.	manibus	cornibus

(a) A few nouns, of which **portus**, *harbor*, is the most common, have -ubus or -ibus in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

221 The Gender of most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in -us is Masculine. A few, of which **domus**,¹ *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are the most common, are Feminine. All ending in -ū are neuter.

¹ **Domus** has besides the regular forms of the Fourth Declension the following forms of the Second: Dat. and Abl. Sing. **domō**; Gen. Plur. **domōrum**; Accu. Plur. **domōs**.

FIFTH OR -ē DECLENSION

Stem in ē

222

PARADIGMS

	Diēs, m. <i>day</i>.	Rēs, f. <i>thing</i>.
	diē-	rē-
	SINGULAR	
NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diēī	reī
DAT.	diēī	reī
ACCU.	diem	rem
ABL.	diē	rē
	PLURAL	
NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus
ACCU.	diēs	rēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus

(a) Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout. Other nouns, if used at all in the plural, are found only in the nominative and accusative.

(b) Notice that the genitive and dative singular have the ending **-ēī** when the stem vowel is preceded by a consonant, but when a vowel precedes, the ending is **-ēī**.

223 The Gender of nouns of the Fifth Declension is Feminine with the exception of **dies, *day***, which is usually masculine.

224

VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, f. *line* (of battle). **cornū, -ūs, n. *horn, wing***
agmen, -inis, n. *line* (of (of an army).
march). **dexter, -tra, -trum, *right*.**

equitātus , -ūs, m. <i>cavalry</i> .	rēs , rei, f. <i>thing, fact</i> .
exercitus , -ūs, m. <i>army</i> .	senex , senis, ¹ m. <i>old man</i> .
manus , -ūs, f. <i>hand, band</i> (of soldiers).	sinister , -tra, -trum, <i>left</i> .
necō , -āre, <i>to kill</i> .	tribūnus , -ī, m. <i>tribune</i> (a military officer).

225 1. Posterō diē Caesar omnia superiōra loca subitō occupāvit et manūs hostium fugāvit. 2. Secundā hōrā diēi ācriter inter equitātum Caesaris et hostium in flūmine pūgnātum est. 3. Iam vulnera Gallōrum et multa et gravia erant; sed princeps eōrum senex tribūnum nostrum necāvit et corpus armīs spoliāvit. 4. Hōc diē in dexterā ripā flūminis erant multa corpora hominum quae armīs spoliāta erant. 5. Dum (*while*) impedimenta in proximum collem portantur,² subitō exercitus Gallōrum aderat et agmen Rōmānum oppūgnāvit. 6. In sinistrō cornū hostium erat pater rēgis, insīgnis senex, quī equum in nostrōs ācriter incitāvit. 7. Primā lūce aciēs hostium in campō ante castra aderat; ad multam noctem ācriter dīmīcāvērunt hostēs, nam Gallī nōn minus fortēs quam nostrī erant. 8. Atrōx erat illa caedēs Gallōrum, quī contrā sinistrum cornū fortiter pūgnāverant, sed septimā hōrā in flūmen ā nostris fugātī sunt. 9. Multō dūriōrēs sunt hiemēs in eis partibus quam in Italiā, diēs breviōrēs, noctēs longiōrēs; quā dē causā itinera nostra erant multō difficiliōra.

226 1. The enemy's army is much larger than Caesar's. 2. Across this river, not far from the mountain, is a large band of Gauls. 3. On the next day the enemy suddenly and boldly attacked the Roman army on the march with all their forces. 4. On the left wing of the enemy's line

¹ Declined in full: **senex**, **senis**, **senī**, **senem**, **sene**; **senēs**, **senum**, **senibus**, etc.

² Translate as if imperfect.

of battle were the Gallic cavalry. 5. The leader of the Gauls had in his right hand a sword, in his left a shield. 6. The Gauls fought long and fiercely at the foot of the mountain for seven consecutive hours and a large part of the chief men were killed. 7. This fact was announced to the tribes of farther Gaul by fires and by shouting. 8. Within seven days the tribune got together¹ a large band of new soldiers.

LESSON XXVII

SECOND or ē CONJUGATION

227 LEARN the Indicative and the present Infinitive of **habeō**, active and passive (480).

(a) Compare the conjugation of **habeō** carefully with that of **amō** (479). Observe that the only difference is in the stem vowels.

(b) Conjugate **teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenui**, **tentus**, *to hold*.

228 1. **Habēs**, **habēbimus**, **habitus est**. 2. **Tenuimus**, **tenuerit**, **tenēbātis**. 3. **Teneor**, **habuit**, **habēberis**. 4. **Habuerat**, **habita erant**, **tenēbar**. 5. **Tenēbis**, **habuerunt**, **habēre**. 6. **Tenērī**, **habētis**, **tenuisti**.

1. You have, we shall hold, we had had. 2. I have held, you will have, you will have had. 3. It is held, we were held, they had. 4. To be held, to have, to hold. 5. We have had, you were having, you had held.

¹ **parō**, **-āre**.

aedificium , -i, n. <i>building, house</i> (aedificō , 101).	maneō , -ēre, mānsi , mānsurus , ¹ <i>to remain</i> .
aqua , -ae, f. <i>water</i> .	natiō , -ōnis, f. <i>nation</i> .
caelum , -i, n. <i>heaven, sky</i> .	nūntius , -i, m. <i>messenger</i> (nūntiō , 126).
captivus , -i, m. <i>captive</i> .	regiō , -ōnis, f. <i>region, direction</i> .
contineō (cum + teneō), -ēre, -nī, -tentus, <i>to hold back, to keep in check</i> .	Rhēnus , -i, m. <i>the Rhine</i> .
hiberna , -ōrum, n. <i>winter quarters</i> .	sustineō , -ēre, -nī, -tentus (sub + teneō), <i>to sustain, withstand</i> .
imperātor , -ōris, m. <i>commander</i> (imperō , 192).	ventus , i, m. <i>wind</i> .
imperium , -i, n. <i>command, rule</i> .	videō , -ēre, vidi , visus , <i>to see</i> (in the passive, <i>to be seen or to seem</i>).
impetus , -ūs, m. <i>onset, attack</i> .	

- 230** 1. Ii quī superiōribus temporibus illās regiōnēs tenēbant, corpora māiōra habēbant. 2. Ubi primō vēre Rōmānae legiōnes ex prōvinciā flūminī Rhēnō adpropinquāverunt, multa animālia vidēbantur cum māgnis capitibus et cornibus. 3. Mulierēs et senēs eārum exterārum natiōnum labōrem māximum facile semper sustinēre vidēbantur; nunc audācter in proximā ripā flūminis ad impedimenta manēbant. 4. Inter captivōs in hibernīs imperātōris fuerant obsidēs, māter et pater illius rēgis, quī prō amīcō populī Rōmānī erat habitus. 5. Ā rēge vēlōx nūntius subitō aderat, quī haec dē cōnsiliō eius nūntiavit: "Hōc locō impetum cōnsulis sustinēbit et prō summō imperiō decertābit." 6. Tertiō diē imperātor cum māgnō exercitū oppidum bene et fēliciter expūgnāvit; haec rēs hostibus celeriter nūntiāta est. 7. Validus erat ventus quī noctem

¹ As the perfect passive participle of **maneō** is not in use, the future active participle is given. This will be done with all intransitive verbs.

et diem hīs regiōnibus flābat¹ et aqua dē caelō erat multa; itaque imperātor militēs in castris et oppidō continēbat. 8. In oppidis erat neque frūmentum neque argentum, et incolae, egentēs et tristēs, miserē in parvis aedificiis habitābant. 9. Extrēmā aestāte faciōre et breviōre itinere in ulteriōrem prōvinciae partem imperātor properāvit.

- 231** 1. In the most ancient times the Roman armies were much smaller. 2. For many years the power was held by kings who kept the neighboring peoples in check by their foot-soldiers and cavalry. 3. The Romans often fought boldly and successfully with their neighbors and sustained many attacks. 4. The districts which they seized were regarded as² Roman land,³ and the nations whom they subdued as slaves. 5. But the Romans did not always deprive of their⁴ lands those whom they had overcome with their arms. 6. In those districts where the winter-quarters of the cavalry were, there was much rain,⁵ but at the opening of spring⁶ the general hurried with all the army into hither Gaul. 7. At daybreak the enemy prepared to withstand our attack. 8. Their line of battle was very long: on the right wing was their bravest cavalry; on their left also many horsemen were seen.

¹ flō, -āre, to blow.

² Compare 230, 4.

³ ager.

⁴ Omit.

⁵ Compare 230, 7.

⁶ Compare 230, 2.

LESSON XXVIII

THE GENITIVE AND THE ABLATIVE
OF QUALITY

232

EXAMPLES

1. **Imperātor bonō animō erat.** *The general was of good courage.*
2. **Erat flūmen altis ripis inter Rōmānōs et hostis.** *There was a river with high banks between the Romans and the enemy.*
3. **Hic vir erat fortis et māgnae auctōritātis.** *This man was brave and very influential.*

(a) Notice that the phrases **bonō animō**, **altis ripis**, **māgnae auctōritātis**, all express some Quality or Characteristic of the noun with which they are connected. They are therefore adjective expressions, so that in the third sentence the genitive is parallel to the adjective **fortis**.

(b) Notice also that in each sentence the ablative or genitive is modified by an adjective.

- 233 . Rule.**—Quality may be expressed by the Genitive, but only when the Genitive is modified by an Adjective.¹

W. 354; B. 203; AG. 215; H. 440, 3.

- 234 . Rule.**—Quality may also be expressed by the Ablative, but only when the Ablative is modified by an Adjective.²

W. 394; B. 224; AG. 251; H. 473, 2.

¹ That is, we may say **vir summae virtūtis**, *a man of the greatest courage*; but we may not say **vir virtūtis**, but **fortis vir**.

² There is often no distinction between the genitive and ablative, but for expressions of time, space, number, and measure, the genitive is used, e. g., **mūrus decem pedum**: while for parts of the body and external qualities the ablative is employed, e. g., **puer magnis pedibus**, and sentence 2 above.

235

VOCABULARY

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus (ad + iuvō, 132), <i>to help, assist.</i>	Graecus, -a, -um, <i>Greek, Grecian.</i>
Asia, -ae, f. <i>Asia.</i>	iuvenis, -is, m. <i>a youth (iuventus, 182).</i>
Athēniēnsis, -e, <i>Athenian.</i>	Miltiadēs, -is, m. <i>Miltiades.</i>
auctōritās, -ātis, f. <i>authority, influence.</i>	necessārius, -a, -um, <i>necessary, needful.</i>
augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctus, <i>to increase.</i>	pauci, -ae, -a, <i>few.</i>
barbarus, -a, -um, <i>barbarous, foreign.</i>	Persicus, -a, -um, <i>Persian.</i>
Chersonēsus, -i, f. <i>the Chersonesus.</i> ¹	saepe, <i>often.</i>
Eurōpa, -ae, f. <i>Europe.</i>	suns, -a, -um, <i>his (her, its, their) own.</i>
fortitūdō, -inis, f. <i>bravery (fortis, 181, fortiter, 111).</i>	timeō, -ēre, -ui, <i>to fear.</i>

- 236 1. Erat olim inter Athēniēnsis iuvenis summae fortitudinis et magnō corpore, cui nōmen erat Miltiadī. 2. Ille imperātor cum magnā manū et nāvibus multis impetum barbarōrum in Chersonēsō feliciter sustinēbat. 3. Hī barbarī hominēs vidēbantur magnā virtūte esse magnumque amōrem patriae habēre. 4. Paucis diēbus omnem illam regiōnem imperātor occupāverat et incolās armīs privāverat; iam bonōs armābat et rēbus necessariis adiuvābat, omnia magnā cūrā administrābat. 5. Ibi cum exercitū multōs annōs manēbat et erat inter eās natiōnes magnae auctōritātis. 6. Postea patriam suam cōnsiliō et virtūte saepe adiuvābat et augēbat. 7. Ab hostibus Atheniēnsium semper timēbātur, ab amicis suis et eōrum magnoperē amābātur. 8. Māximē eius auctōritāte et cōnsiliō adiūtī sunt Atheniēnsēs in Persicō bellō, quō tempore Miltiadēs illum Persicum rēgem superāvit. 9. Nēmō eā victoriā clārior apud Graecōs erat quam Miltiadēs,

¹ A peninsula of Thrace on the northwest of the Hellespont.

nēmō māiōris auctōritātis; itaque Atheniēnsēs eī multās nāvis dedērunt. 10. His nāvibus paucās urbēs, quae barbarōs cōpiīs iūverant, expūgnāvit. Sed postea timuit cōpiās rēgis et Athēnās¹ properāvit.

- 237** 1. The general is a person of great influence; within ten days he will have an army of seven legions. 2. He has increased his forces, which are already many more than in the former war. 3. They have undergone² much labor and are ready to remain the entire winter far from their native country. 4. They have built a seven-foot wall and will gladly fight by reason of their lack of all things needful. 5. The inhabitants of those regions are men of great courage and boldness. 6. The trees are higher than those which we see in our part of Europe, but the houses are very low. 7. The old men are of greater authority, but the young men are feared by the enemy. 8. On the march in Germany they often saw animals with large horns but small bodies.

LESSON XXIX

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

- 238** LEARN the Present System, active and passive, of the Subjunctive of *sum* (485), *amō* (479), and *habeō* (480).

¹ *To Athens.* With names of towns the accusative alone expresses the limit of motion, 425.

² *sustineō.*

(a) Notice carefully the following facts:

(1) That the personal endings of the Subjunctive are the same as those of the Indicative.

(2) But that in the present tense the stem **amā-** of the First Conjugation is changed to **amē-**, and that the stem **habē-** of the Second Conjugation becomes **habea-**.

(3) And that the tense sign of the Imperfect is **-re-**. Compare the tense sign of the Imperfect Indicative.

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

239

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Hunc laudēmus. | <i>Let us praise this man.</i> |
| 2. Hodiē nē pūgnēmus. | <i>Let us not fight to-day.</i> |
| 3. Haec dōna habeat. | <i>Let him have these gifts.</i> |
| 4. Nē haec dōna habeat. | <i>Let him not have these gifts.</i> |

(a) Notice that the Subjunctives in these sentences express the Will of the speaker that something shall or shall not be done. This subjunctive that expresses the will is called the *Volitive Subjunctive* (**volō, to will**). In the third person it is sometimes called also the *Jussive Subjunctive*¹ (**iubeō, to order**).

240 **Rule.**—The Volitive Subjunctive states the action as willed.

W. 481-482; B. 273-275; AG. 266; H. 559.

241

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Haec habeāmus. | <i>May we have this.</i> |
| 2. Nē haec habeat. | <i>May he not have this.</i> |

¹ It should be observed that only the First and Third persons of the Present Subjunctive are ordinarily used in this construction. If we wish to translate into Latin "Praise him," we usually use the imperative, **hunc laudā, 355**; for the negative addressed to the second person, "Do not praise him," the Latin employs a circumlocution which will be given later (**356**).

3. **Utinam fortis esset.** *Would that he were brave.*
 4. **Utinam nē hostēs essent.** *Would that they were not enemies.*

(a) Notice that here the subjunctives express the Wish or Desire of the speaker that something may or may not be done. This subjunctive is called the *Optative Subjunctive* (*optō, to wish, desire*). Compare with the Volitive Subjunctive.

(b) Notice also that the Present tense refers to Future, the Imperfect to Present time.

(c) In the Optative Subjunctive all three persons may be used. Compare the Volitive Subjunctive.

(d) **Utinam** is often used with the Present, regularly with the Imperfect, of the Optative Subjunctive.

- 242** *Rule.*—The Optative Subjunctive states the action as a wish or desire.

W. 484; B. 279; AG. 267; H. 558.

- 243** 1. Haec laudēmus; frātre^m suum laudet. 2. Haec habeāmus; nē pūgnent. 3. Utinam fortēs essētis; utinam laudārentur. 4. Dūcem laudētis; utinam nē pūgnārētis. 5. Nē haec habeat; bonī sīmus.

- 244** 1. Let them be slaves; may they be free. 2. Would that you were being praised; let us praise them. 3. Would that we were not fighting against them; let him have the books. 4. May we have the gifts; let us not be slaves.

245 VOCABULARY

fidēs, -eī, f. <i>faith, pledge.</i>	memoria, -ae, f. <i>memory.</i>
hodiē (hōc + diē), adv. <i>to-day.</i>	moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus, to move; signa movēre, to advance; castra movēre, to break camp.
māiōres, -um, m. <i>elders, forefathers.</i>	

nē, adv. and conj. *not*.
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (prō
 + habeō), *to hinder, prevent, keep from*.

rēs publica, **rei publicae**,¹ f.
state.

sī, conj. *if*.

signum, -ī, n. *signal, standard*.

spēs, -eī, f. *hope*.

tamen, adv. *still, nevertheless*.

tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon, spear, javelin*. (Compare **hasta**, **arma**, 111.)

tum, adv. *then, at that time*.

utinam, adv., used with optative subjunctive.

vix, adv. *hardly, with difficulty*.

- 246 1. Nōn sine spē, mīlitēs, sīmus; nē hodiē castra moveāmus. 2. Vidēmus, iuvenēs, aciem equitātumque hostium; nē timeāmus impetum eōrum. 3. Sed sī fortissimē cum eis pūgnābimus, clāra victōria nostra erit. Prohibeāmus hostīs ab aquā et ā rēbus necessariīs. 4. Ubi signum ab imperātōre dabitur, signa moveāmus et castra quam² celerrimē oppūgnēmus. 5. Bona spēs victōriae nostrīs mīlitibus est. Sī eōs fugābimus, nostra auctōritās apud omnīs nātiōnēs māxima erit. 6. Senēs et mulierēs omnēs cum suis impedimentīs in castra properent quae nōn longē ab hāc ripā absunt. Difficillimis ripīs est hōc flūmen; itaque barbarī castrīs vix adpropinquābunt. 7. Utinam hodiē eum animum habērēmus quem mīiōrēs nostrī paucīs ante annīs nōn longē ab hīs locīs habuērunt. 8. Semper, cīvēs, memoriā teneātis ea quae mīiōrēs vestrī prō rē publicā fecērunt.³ 9. Utinam nē impetum Gallōrum timērētis. Sī mīiōra corpora et longiōra tēla habent, nōn fortiōrēs sunt. 10. Sī virtūtem, fidem, fortitudinemque mīiōrum memoriā tenēbitis, audācius impetum hostium sustinēbitis.

¹ Each part is declined separately: Dat. **rei publicae**: Acc. **rem publicam**, etc.

² **quam** with the superlative of adjectives and adverbs means *as possible*.

³ Perf. indic. of **faciō**, *to do*.

- 247 1. Would that you remembered to-day all the things which our ancestors did¹ for our native land. 2. They freed their state from the fear of the barbarians, who had come against it with a great force. 3. The leader who held the command was a man of great foresight.² Would that he were present to-day. 4. Let us not remain longer in this place, but break camp to-day and hurry into the neighboring mountains. 5. The enemy's commander is a man of the greatest bravery and influence; still our men have good hope of victory. 6. If we shall keep the enemy away from our supplies, our allies will soon aid us. 7. May we soon advance a long distance from this camp; then we shall not be kept from water and supplies. 8. May Caesar's influence increase the bravery of his own auxiliary troops.

LESSON XXX

SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES

PURPOSE CLAUSES

248

EXAMPLES

1. Pūgnant (pūgnāvērunt) *They are fighting (have fought) to be free.*
ut liberī sint.
2. Pūgnant (pūgnāvērunt) *They are fighting (have fought) that they may not be slaves.*
nē servī sint.

¹ 246, 8.

² cōnsilium.

3. *Pugnābunt ut liberi sint.* *They will fight to be free.*
 4. *Pugnābunt nē servi sint.* *They will fight that they may not be slaves.*
 5. *Pugnābant (pugnāvērunt) ut liberi essent.* *They were fighting (fought) to be free.*
 6. *Pugnābant (pugnāvērunt) nē servi essent.* *They were fighting (fought) that they might not be slaves.*

(a) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the Purpose of the leading verb; also that the conjunction *ut* introduces positive clauses, *nē* negative.

(b) Notice further that when the point of view of the leading verb is Present¹ or Future, the Present Subjunctive² follows; when the point of view is Past,³ the Imperfect Subjunctive is used in the dependent clause.

(c) In a dependent clause the subjunctive is said to follow the tense of the principal verb, which fixes the point of view. This relation is called the *Sequence of Tenses*.

249 *Rule.*—The Subjunctive is used with *ut*, *that*, *nē*, *that not*, to express Purpose.

W. 506; B. 282; AG. 317; H. 568.

¹ The point of view of the definite perfect, in English, *I have fought*, is the same as that of the present tense; but that of the indefinite, in English, *I fought*, is past like the imperfect.

² The student should remember that the present subjunctive in independent sentences (239, 241) may express future time, so that its use in clauses depending on a future verb is natural. As it also may have a present meaning, it does double duty.

³ I. e., imperfect or indefinite perfect.

250

RESULT CLAUSES

EXAMPLES

1. **Nostri tam fortiter pūgnant** (pūgnāvērunt). **ut hostis fugent.** *Our soldiers are fighting (have fought) so bravely that they are putting the enemy to flight.*
2. **Nostri tam fortiter pūgnābant** (pūgnāvērunt) **ut nōn superārentur.** *Our men were fighting (fought) so bravely that they were not conquered.*

(a) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the Result of the action of the leading verb; also that **ut** introduces positive results, **ut nōn** negative.

(b) Compare these with purpose clauses above and notice that **nē** is used only with negative purpose, **ut nōn** only with negative result clauses; notice also that in result clauses, as in those of purpose, the present tense follows the present point of view, the imperfect the past.

251 *Rule.*—The Subjunctive is used with **ut**, **that**, **ut nōn**, **that not**, to express Result.

W. 519; B. 284; AG. 319; H. 570.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 252 celeritās, -ātis , f. <i>speed</i> . | porta, -ae , f. <i>a gate</i> . |
| cūr , adv. <i>why?</i> | portus, -ūs , m. <i>harbor</i> . |
| enim , conj. <i>for</i> (nam , 138). | postquam , conj. <i>after</i> . ² |
| mille , ¹ adj. <i>thousand</i> . | statim , adv. <i>immediately</i> . |
| multitūdō, -inis , f. <i>crowd</i> . | tantus, -a, -um , adj. <i>so great</i> , |
| Nūma, -ae , m. <i>Numa</i> . | <i>such</i> . |
| ōrō, -āre , <i>to ask, beg</i> . | terreō, -ēre, terrui, territus , |
| passus, -ūs , m. <i>pace</i> (about | <i>to frighten</i> . |
| five feet). | ut , conj. <i>that</i> . |

¹ **Mille** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. The plural is a neuter noun and is declined: Nom. Acc. Voc. **mīlia**, Gen. **mīlīum**, Dat. Abl. **mīlībūs**.

² Used with the perfect indicative.

253 1. Cūr senēs iuvenēsque ex portīs oppidī tantā celeritāte adpropinquābant? 2. Hibernīs nostrīs adpropinquābant ut ōrārent nē in numerō hostium habērentur. 3. Postquam signum datum est, nostrī castra statim mōvērunt; barbarī ita terrēbantur ut in oppidō nōn continērentur. 4. Omnēs quī eum locum habitābant, nē frūmentō prohibērentur, māgnā celeritāte decem milia passuum¹ in finīs sociōrum properābant. 5. Proximō diē māgna multitūdō Gallōrum locum castrīs magis idōneum occupāvit; tum Caesar cum parte equitātus properāvit ut hunc locum oppugnāret. 6. Galli in memoriā tenēbant omnia quae māiōrēs fēcērunt ut patria libera esset; itaque dūx eōrum māgnam spem victōriae habuit. 7. Utinam tantam fidem habērēmus ut in hāc rē publicā nēmō malus esset. 8. Māiōrem partem cōpiārum continēbat imperātor in hibernīs, quae septem milia passuum ab eō oppidō aberant sed proxima portuī. 9. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, cōnsul omnia auxilia in sinistrō, sociōs in dextrō cornū tantā celeritāte conlocāvit, ut hostēs statim terrērentur.

254 1. The Gauls often fought that they might not be deprived of their towns and lands. 2. The Romans built their city on hills in order that it might not be suddenly attacked by the enemy. 3. The city was small in the time of Romulus, the first king, but it was afterward enlarged so that it was the greatest city in Italy. 4. The Romans were men of such bravery and courage that they were not often conquered by the enemy. 5. Romulus, in order that he might increase the number of citizens, gave citizenship to many from the neighboring peoples. 6. The next king, whose name was Numa, was very different from Romulus (dative); for he liked peace more than war. 7. Why did consuls, rather than² kings, hold the power afterward?

¹ mille passūs, a Roman *mile*, about 5,000 feet.

² prō.

The Persian Wars

Posterō annō Dārēus, rēx Persārum, lēgātōs in Graeciam mīsit,¹ quī rēgis nōmine terram et aquam ā cīvitatibus Graeciae postulābant; simulque alii lēgātī maritimās urbēs Āsiae nāvis longās parāre iubēbant.² Brevi tempore hae urbēs nāvis, quās rēx eis imperāverat,³ parāvērunt. Lēgātīs, quī in Graeciam missi sunt,⁴ ā multis cīvitatibus data sunt omnia quae rēx postulāverat; sed contrā eas quae terram et aquam nōn dederant, Dārēus māximō exercitū pūgnāre parāvit. Itaque imperātōrēs ēius, Dātis et Artaphernēs, plūrimās nāvis adversus⁵ Eretriam⁶ et Athēnās dūxērunt, quās urbēs Dārēus expūgnāre atque incolās in servitūtem redigere⁷ māximē cupivit.⁸ Eretria sex⁹ diēs āb Persis frustrā¹⁰ oppūgnābātur; sed septimō diē duo cīvēs urbem hostibus prōdidērunt,¹¹ postquam multī utrimque¹² occīsī sunt.¹³ Hostēs omnia vastāvērunt atque incolās, ut¹⁴ Dārēus imperāverat, in servitūtem redēgērunt.¹⁵ Post paucōs diēs ad Atticam nāvigāvērunt hostēs ut Athēniēnsīs quoque superārent. In campum Marathōnium,¹⁶ quī locus totius Atticae opportunissimus¹⁷ erat equitibus, cōpiās ē nāvibus ēdūxērunt.¹⁸

¹ Perf. indic. act. of *mittō*, to send.

² *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussī*, *iussus*, to order.

³ See 192.

⁴ Perf. indic. pass. of *mittō*.

⁵ Prep. with the accu., *against*; compare *contrā*.

⁶ A city in Euboea.

⁷ To reduce.

⁸ Perf. ind. act. of *cupiō*, to wish.

⁹ Six.

¹⁰ Adv., *in vain*.

¹¹ Perf. indic. act. of *prōdō*, to betray.

¹² Adv., *on both sides*.

¹³ Perf. indic. pass. of *occīdō*, to kill.

¹⁴ *As*.

¹⁵ Perf. ind. act. of *redigere*.

¹⁶ *Of Marathon*.

¹⁷ *opportunus*, *sited*.

¹⁸ Perf. indic. act. of *ēdūcō*, to lead out, to disembark.

LESSON XXXI

THIRD OR *ē* CONJUGATION

PRESENT SYSTEM

256 LEARN the Present System of **regō**, **481**, in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive.

(a) Notice that the stem of verbs in this Conjugation end in **-ē** (**i**). Compare this with the stems of the First and Second Conjugations.

(b) Notice also that the Future Indicative is not formed by the tense sign **-bī-** (**-bē**) as in **amābō** and **habēbō**, but that the vowel is **-a** in the First Person Singular and **-e** in the other persons. Compare also the formation of the Present Subjunctive **regam** with **amem** and **habeam**.

257 Conjugate the following: **dīcō**, *to say*; **dūcō**, *to lead*; **mittō**, *to send*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

258

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Dūcī persuādent (persuāsērunt) ut auxilium mittat. | <i>They persuade (have persuaded) the leader to send help.</i> |
| 2. Lēgātis imperābit ut bellum gerant. | <i>He will order his lieutenants to carry on the war.</i> |
| 3. Eum orābant (orāvērunt) nē oppidum oppugnāret. | <i>They were asking (asked) him not to attack the town.</i> |

(a) Notice that in each sentence the dependent clause is a direct object of the verb, that is, that the clause is a substantive; moreover, that each dependent clause expresses also the purpose of the subject of the leading

verb. Such clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Purpose*¹ and are used with verbs whose action looks toward the future.

(b) Notice further that the sequence of Tenses is the same as in simple Purpose Clauses, 248, that is, that the Present Subjunctive follows the present point of view, the Imperfect the past.

259 *Rule.*—Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used after verbs whose action looks toward the future—that is, verbs of Will or Aim.

W. 511; B. 295; AG. 331; H. 564 ff.

260

VOCABULARY

adventus , -ūs, m. <i>arrival</i> .	Ēpirus , -i, f. <i>Epirus</i> (a district of Northwestern Greece).
āmittō , -ere, -misi, -missus (<i>ā</i> + mittō), <i>to lose</i> .	gerō , -ere, gessi, gestus, <i>to carry on, perform</i> .
Appius , -i, m. <i>Appius</i> .	iterum , adv. <i>again</i> .
atque , ac, ² conj. <i>and</i> .	lĕgātĭō , -ōnis, f. <i>embassy</i> (lĕgātus, 138).
Cineas , -ae, ³ m. <i>Cineas</i> .	mittō , -ere, misi, missus, <i>to send</i> .
classis , -is, f. <i>fleet</i> .	modus , -i, m. <i>manner</i> .
Claudius , -i, m. <i>Claudius</i> .	persuādeō , -ĕre, -suāsi, -suāsūrus, <i>to persuade</i> (with dat. of the person).
committō , -ere, -misi, -missus (<i>cum</i> + mittō), <i>to engage</i> (in battle).	
dīcō , -ere, dixi, dictus, <i>to say</i> .	

¹ While Substantive Clauses of Purpose are generally used as objects of the leading verb, they are occasionally employed as subjects of Passive Verbs, e. g., *ut bellum gerant lĕgātis imperātum est*, *That they should carry on the war was the command to the lieutenants*.

² *atque* is used before vowels and consonants, *ac* only before consonants.

³ A Greek name declined like any noun of the First Declension except in the nominative.

petō, -ere, petivī (-ī),¹ petitus, to seek, ask. **renūtiō, -āre (re + nūtiō, 126), to carry back**

primum, adv. first, for the first time. **word.**

pūgna, -ae, f. battle (pūgnō, 101). **Tarentīnus, -i, m. a citizen of Tarentum (a city in Southern Italy).**

Pyrrhus, -i, m. Pyrrhus (King of Epirus).

- 261** 1. Tarentīnī ōrābant Rōmānōs, nē portum suum cum nāvibus intrārent; sed Rōmānī māgnam classem mīsērunt. 2. Itaque Tarentīnī per lēgātiōnem petunt ā Pyrrhō, Ēpirī rēge, ut auxilium contrā Rōmānōs mittat. 3. Eī persuāsērunt ut statim māgnō exercitū adiuvāret; tum primum Rōmānī cum hoste exterō dīmīcāvērunt. 4. Hī primā pūgnā, quam post adventum Pyrrhī cum eō commīsērunt, ita terrēbantur ut facile superāret rēx ille. 5. Tantam multitudinem hominum hōc in proeliō āmisit Pyrrhus ut diceret, “Sī iterum hōc modō Rōmānōs superāverō, bellum diūtius gerere nōn poterō.”² 6. Lēgātī, quī dē captīvīs missī sunt, summō honōre ab Pyrrhō habēbantur; captīvōs statim Rōmam³ mīsīt. 7. Nam ille omnia faciēbat⁴ nē grāvis Rōmānīs Tarentīnisque vidērētur. 8. Postea Pyrrhus lēgātum, Cīneam nōmine, ad urbem Rōmam mīsīt, eō cōnsiliō, ut pāx cum Rōmānīs esset; multum argentum portābat ut dōnīs persuādēret Rōmānīs. 9. Sed Appius Claudius, vir clārissimus, civibus persuāsīt nē cum rēge pācem cōfirmārent. 10. Itaque Cīneas Pyrrhō renūtiāvit: “Urbs Rōma templum, patria rēgum, hominēs rēgēs esse videntur.”

- 262** 1. An embassy is sent by the Romans to ask Pyrrhus to liberate the prisoners. 2. Pyrrhus ordered the Roman

¹ A number of verbs have two forms in the perfect active, e. g., **petivī** or **petīī**.

² Future indic. of **possum, to be able**.

³ Compare 236, 10.

⁴ *Did.*

prisoners to be liberated and sent to the city. 3. You will not persuade the Romans to establish peace, if you remain in Italy. 4. In the first battle in which he engaged after his arrival, Pyrrhus was victorious,¹ but he lost many men. 5. He said, "If I fight again in this way, I shall no longer have an army." 6. I hope that (*utinam*) there will not be a victory of this sort again. 7. They persuaded Pyrrhus not to fight again on that day. 8. Cineas captured more cities by eloquence² than by arms. 9. The chief man of the embassy asked the Romans to make peace with the king, but Appius persuaded them to carry on the war much longer.

LESSON XXXII

THIRD CONJUGATION (Continued)

PERFECT SYSTEM

263 LEARN the Perfect System of *regō*, **481**, in the Indicative,³ and review the Perfect System in the Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations.

VOCABULARY

264

<i>Africa</i> , -ae, f. <i>Africa</i> .	<i>cōgō</i> , -ere, <i>cōēgi</i> , <i>cōāctus</i>
<i>agō</i> , -ere, <i>ēgi</i> , <i>āctus</i> , to	(<i>cum</i> + <i>agō</i>), to drive to-
drive, do. ⁴	gether, to compel.
<i>Carthāginiēnsis</i> , -e, <i>Cartha-</i>	<i>condiciō</i> , -ōnis, f. condition,
<i>ginian</i> .	terms.

¹ *vīctor*.² *vōce*.³ The perfect and pluperfect Subjunctives and the other moods will be learned later.⁴ *grātiās agere*, to pay thanks, to thank. Compare *grātiām habēre*, to feel grateful.

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, to exert one's self, hasten.	quod, conj. <i>because</i> .
deinde, ¹ adv. <i>then, secondly</i> .	reddō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (re + dō) <i>to return</i> .
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, to lead (dūx, 144).	Rēgulus, -ī, m. <i>Regulus</i> (a Roman general).
indignus, -a, -um, <i>unworthy, shameful</i> .	rūsus, adv. <i>again</i> .
ingēns, -tis, <i>huge</i> .	senātus, -ūs, m. <i>senate</i> .
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, <i>Lacedaemonian</i> .	sententia, -ae, f. <i>opinion</i> .
perītus, -a, -um, <i>skilled, experienced</i> .	tot (indeclinable), <i>so many</i> .
	trādūco, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to lead across (trāns + dūcō).
	ūnus, -a, -um, ² <i>one, a single</i> .

- 265 1. Rēgulus, princeps Rōmānōrum, exercitum in Africam trādūxit ut ibi bellum gereret. 2. Ille erat vir summae virtūtis; māgnā spē victōriae contrā hostis contendit. 3. Mox multis pūgnis Carthāginiēnsis ita superāvit ut pācem petere cōgerentur. Senātus Rōmānus illi grātiās ēgit quod rēs in Africā bene gesserat. 4. Rēgulus dūrisimās condiciōnēs dabat; deinde Carthāginiēnsēs ā Lacedaemoniīs petiērunt ut imperātorem belli perītissimum mitterent. 5. Ab eō Rōmānī ingenti clāde superāti sunt et māgnam partem exercitūs amīsērunt. Inter captivōs erat Rēgulus. 6. Sed proximō annō bellum feliciter rūsus gerēbant Rōmānī et post multa mala³ hostēs Rēgulum captivum Rōmam⁴ mittere cōgerentur, ut per eum pācem peterent. 7. Postquam eum in senātum dūxērunt Rōmānī, eī imperāvērunt ut sententiam dē pāce et captivīs Rōmānīs diceret. 8. Ille ōrābat nē tot milia captivōrum propter ūnum senem et paucōs Rōmānōs redderent ut

¹ Always a dissyllable.

² Genitive sing. ūnīus, dat. sing. ūnī; otherwise declined like bonus. Compare tōtus, 177.

³ mala: neut. plur. used as a substantive.

⁴ Compare 286, 10.

indigna pax cum hostibus esset. 9. Hęc sententiā mōtī sunt Rōmānī ut bellum multō ācrius administrārent; sed Rēgulus ā Carthāginiēnsibus indignissimō modō est necātus.

- 266** 1. The Senate ordered Regulus to lead an army across into Africa. 2. Regulus led an army across into Africa with the design of carrying on war with the Carthaginians. 3. In what manner did Regulus carry on the war after his arrival? 4. Regulus was a general experienced in war and he quickly compelled the Carthaginians to sue for peace. 5. The Senate thanked Regulus, and then asked him to give¹ his opinion with regard to the conditions of peace. 6. He said: "It is not best to return the prisoners, but to send me back to Africa again." 7. Regulus was a man of great patriotism and great courage; the manner of his death was most sad. 8. Regulus was held in the highest honor by the Romans on account of his many victories and his great spirit.

LESSON XXXIII

THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -iō)

- 267** LEARN the conjugation of *capīō*, 482, in the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive.

(a) Notice that in the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, and in the Present Subjunctive the -i of the

¹ dīcō.

stem is retained whenever it is followed by another vowel.

268

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

1. **Efficit (efficit) ut socii omnia dūci renūntient.** *He secures (has secured) the result that the allies report everything to the leader, or He succeeds (has succeeded) in having the allies, etc.*
2. **Efficiet ut socii omnia dūci renūntient.** *He will succeed in having, etc.*
3. **Impetrābat (impetrāvit) ab eō ut castra nōn movēret.** *He was obtaining (obtained) from him the result that he did not break camp.*

(a) Compare these clauses with Substantive Clauses of Purpose (258), and notice that these also bear the relation of substantives to leading verbs as well as express the result actually obtained in each case. Such clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Result* and are used with verbs expressing the accomplishment of a result.¹

(b) Notice that the sequence of tenses is the same as in all other Result or Purpose Clauses.

269

Rule.—Substantive Clauses of Result with *ut* (negative *ut nōn*) fill out or complete what is implied in the leading verb.

W. 521–526; B. 297; AG. 332; H. 571.

¹ A Substantive Clause of Result may also be the Subject of the leading verb, e. g., *impetrātum est ut omnia renūntiārentur*. *The result obtained was that everything was reported.*

270

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUIN, *that not*

EXAMPLES

1. Nōn dubitō quin socii haec renūntient. *I do not doubt that the allies are reporting this.*
2. Nōn dubitābo quin socii haec renūntient. *I shall not doubt that the allies will report this.*
3. Nōn erat dubium quin socii haec renūntiarent. *There was no doubt that the allies reported this.*
4. Nōn dēterrēbantur hostēs quin in finis sociōrum contenderent. *The enemy were not deterred from hurrying into the lands of the allies.*

271

Rule.—Substantive clauses introduced by *quin* are used depending on a negative verb, or verbal expression, of Doubting, Hindering, and the like.

W. 575–579; B. 298; AG. 332, *g*; H. 595–596.

272

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|---|
| clam, adv. <i>secretly</i> . | dēnique, adv. <i>finally</i> . |
| Cunctātor, -ōris, m. <i>The Delayer</i> (a name applied to Fabius). | dēterrēō, -ēre, -terrui, -itus (dē + terrēō, 252), <i>to frighten away, deter</i> . |
| cupiō, -ere, -ivi (-ii), -itus, <i>to desire</i> . | dubitō, -āre, <i>to doubt</i> . |
| dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus (dē + dūcō, 264), <i>to lead away</i> . | efficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (ē + faciō), <i>to accomplish, bring about</i> . |
| dēfendō, -ere, -di, dēfēnsus, <i>to defend</i> . | Fabius, -i, m. <i>Fabius</i> . |
| | faciō, -ere, -fēci, factus, ¹ <i>to do, make</i> . |

¹ The irregular passive will be given later; but compounds of *faciō* which like *efficiō* change *a* to *i* have a regular passive, *efficior*, etc.

fugiō, -ere, fugi, fugitūrus,	Saguntum, -i, n. <i>Saguntum</i> <i>to flee.</i> (a city in Spain).
Hannibal, -alis, m. <i>Hannibal.</i>	tergum, -i, n. <i>back.</i>
licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est (impersonal), <i>it is per-</i> <i>mitted.</i>	trādō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (trāns + dō), <i>to hand over, be-</i> <i>tray.</i>
quīn, conj. <i>but that, from.</i>	uter, utra, utrum, <i>which of</i> <i>two?</i> ¹
ratio, -ōnis, f. <i>way, reason.</i>	

- 273 1. Deinde postquam Saguntum ā Carthāginiēnsibus armīs captum est, statim lēgatiō in Africam missa est, cuius princeps erat Fabius. 2. Fabius effēcit ut in Africam mitterētur. "Hīc," dixit senātui Carthāginiēnsium, "bellum et pācem portō. Utrum vōbīs² optimum videtur, habere licet." 3. Nōn dubitābat Fabius hōc bellō quīn novam bellī ratiōnem capere melius esset. 4. Itaque morā rem publicam dēfendit: sī hostēs terga dabant atque fugiēbant, ad eōs contendit; sī pūgnāre cupiēbant, Fabius agmen dēdūxit. 5. Hōc modō effēcit ut Cunctātōris nōmen caperet et summus peritissimusque dūx laudārētur. 6. Nōn dubium erat quīn Fabius rem publicam morā servāret. 7. Tamen dūx Carthāginiēnsium nōn dētterrēbātur quīn bellum māgnā cum virtūte celebritāteque gereret. 8. Tarentinī iuvenēs, ut urbem Carthāginiēnsibus trāderent, ad Hannibalem contendērunt et eum dē cōsiliō suō certiōrem fēcērunt.³ 9. Hannibal iuvenibus persuāsit ut pecora Carthāginiēnsium, quae in agrīs erant, ad urbem agerent. 10. Id saepe fēcērunt; dēnique Hannibal milītēsque eius cum iuvenibus portīs clam adpropinquāvērunt atque urbem intrābant.

¹ Genitive sing. in all genders *utrius*; dat. sing. *utrī*. Compare the demonstrative pronouns (123, 135).

² *To you.*

³ *eum certiōrem facere, to inform him.*

- 274** 1. There was no doubt that Fabius was managing affairs well by his policy of delay.¹ 2. The soldiers were not deterred by fear of the enemy from hastening in line of battle to the town. 3. He made the enemy turn their backs and flee in great haste. 4. Hannibal ordered the young men to drive the flocks to the city-gates. 5. Finally Hannibal succeeded in² entering the city secretly with his soldiers. 6. The Carthaginians desired to make war, because they had no doubt that Hannibal was a more skilful general than Fabius. 7. "Again a victory of this sort, and I shall have made an end of the war." 8. "The Romans also have a general skilled in war. We have lost the city in the same³ way in which we took it."

LESSON XXXIV

FOURTH OR -i CONJUGATION

- 275** LEARN the conjugation of **audiō, 483**, in the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive.

(a) Notice that the stem of verbs in this Conjugation ends with -i, and compare this with the stems of the other Conjugations. Observe that verbs like **capiō, 483**, have a number of forms similar to those of the Fourth Conjugation, but that the stem vowels differ, as is shown by the Present Infinitives.

(b) Notice that the Tense Sign of the Future Indica-

¹ Translate simply, *by delay*.

² *efficere ut*.

³ *eōdem*.

tive in verbs of the Third and Fourth Conjugations is -e- (-a-), but in verbs of the First and Second -bi- (-be-).

276

VOCABULARY

anteā , adv. <i>before</i> .	pellō , -ere, pepuli , pulsus , to <i>drive</i> .
Antiochus , -ī, m. <i>Antiochus</i> .	relinquō , -ere, -liqui, -lictus, to <i>leave behind</i> .
cōgnōscō , -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, to <i>find out</i> , to <i>become acquainted with</i> .	sciō , scīre, scīvī, scītus, to <i>know</i> (a fact).
dēdō , -ere, -didī, -ditus (dē + dō), to <i>give up</i> .	simul , adv. <i>at the same time</i> .
Hispānia , -ae, f. <i>Spain</i> .	sub , prep. with accu. and abl. <i>under</i> . ²
impediō , -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, to <i>impede</i> , <i>hinder</i> .	Syria , -ae, f. <i>Syria</i> .
iniūria , -ae, f. <i>injury</i> , <i>wrong</i> .	veniō , -īre, vēnī , ventūrus , to <i>come</i> .
opera , -ae, f. <i>labor</i> . ¹	

- 277** 1. Hannibal puer ā patre petivit ut cum exercitū Carthāginiēnsī in Hispāniam venīre licēret. 2. "Nōn prohibēbō," dixit pater, "quīn ad castra mea veniās, sī fidem quam postulō dederis." 3. Hannibal, pūgnae avidissimus, equitibus imperāvit ut dē adventū hostium cōgnōscerent. 4. Nōn dubitāvit quīn eōs facile fugāret; sed neque numerum hostium neque ratiōnem pūgnae scīvīt. 5. Agmen hostium tantā celeritātē sub montem vēnit ut Hannibal neque iter impedīret neque locum castrīs idōneum caperet. 6. Posterō diē ab Rōmānīs in aciē diū fēliciterque pūgnātum est ut hostēs pellerentur. 7. Lēgātī ad urbem vēnērunt ut senātui populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent simulque peterent ut captīvī redderentur. 8. Impetrā-

¹ **operam dare**, to give attention to, to take pains.

² **sub** with the accusative denotes motion to a place, **sub monte**, to the foot of the mountain; with the ablative rest in a place, **sub monte**, at the foot of the mountain. Compare **in**.

vērunt lēgātī ut captīvī et obsidēs quōs Rōmānīs dederant sine morā redderentur. 9. Postquam Hannibal in Italiā rēs bene gessit, in Africam nāvigāvit ut patriam quoque dēfenderet hostisque ex eā pelleret. 10. Postea Hannibal Africam clam reliquit et ad rēgem Antiochum in Syriam fūgit, nē Rōmānīs dēderētur. 11. Eīs partibus et sub eō caelō fuit eōdem¹ animō, quō antea, ac semper operam dedit, ut Rōmānīs iniūriam faceret.

- 278** 1. Hannibal came into Italy in order that he might bring injury upon the Roman nation. 2. The Romans could² not keep Hannibal from leading his army across into Italy. 3. They could² not hinder his approach;³ but after he came to the foot of the mountains which are not far from Rome, they sent Fabius against him with the greatest speed. 4. No one doubted that Hannibal was a greater general than Fabius; but the latter kept him from besieging the city. 5. He always made an effort to become acquainted with the enemy's method of warfare. 6. After Hannibal left Africa, he came to the king of Syria, where he remained many years. 7. Ambassadors came, who asked that their general might be allowed to leave Italy with his wounded.

LESSON XXXV

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

- 279** REVIEW the Indicative, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of the four conjugations (479-483).

¹ Abl. of *idem*, *the same*.

² *poterant*.

³ *iter*.

280

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

1. **Equitēs praemittit qui** *He sends forward horsemen*
videant. *to see (who are to see).*
2. **Equitēs praemisit quō celerius imperātor haec** *He sent horsemen forward*
audiret. *that the general might*
hear this the quicker.

(a) Notice that in the first sentence the Relative **qui** introduces the Purpose Clause and is equivalent to **ut eī**. A Relative rather than **ut** is used to introduce a Purpose Clause when the antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the antecedent clause.

(b) Notice that in the second sentence the Purpose Clause contains a comparative, **celerius**; **quō** is the ablative case of the relative and is equivalent to **ut eō**, the Ablative being the Ablative of the Degree of Difference, 197. We translate by the English adverb *the*, as in the phrases *the more, the less, the quicker*, etc. **Quō** is only used to introduce Purpose Clauses which contain a Comparative. The Sequence is the same as in other Purpose Clauses.

281

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

1. **Sunt quī putent.** *There are men who think.*
2. **Nēmō est quī haec nōn** *There is no one who does*
faciat. *not do this.*
3. **Quis erat quī haec nōn** *Who was there who did not*
faceret? *do this?*
4. **Nōn is sum quī haec dicam.** *I am not one to say this.*

(a) Notice that the principal clause is either a negative or general expression stating something indefinitely, and that the relative clauses answer the question, *Of what kind?* Such clauses are called *Relative Clauses of Characteristic*.

(b) Whenever the antecedent is definite, the relative clause defines who or what is meant and only incidentally characterizes the antecedent, e. g., *Brūtus erat qui Caesarem occidit. It was Brutus who killed Caesar. Hic est qui haec dicit. This is the man who says this.* In such relative clauses the Indicative is regularly used.

- 282** *Rule.*—A relative clause which states the natural result or Character of something suggested indefinitely in the principal clause, is called a Clause of Characteristic and takes the Subjunctive.

W. 587–588; B. 283; AG. 320; H. 591.

283

VOCABULARY

Alcibiadēs, -is, m. <i>Alcibiades.</i>	plērique, plēraeque, plēra-
expediō, -ire, -ivi (-iī), -itus	que, the most of.¹
<i>to get ready (impediō,</i>	potestās, -tātis, f. power,
276).	ability.
incendo, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus,	praeſciō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus
<i>to set fire to.</i>	(prae + faciō, 272), to put
interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus	in command of.²
(inter + faciō), to kill.	praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus
magistrātus, -ūs, m. magis-	(prae + mittō, 260), to
trate, office.	send ahead.
mōs, mōris, m. custom; plur.	recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus
character.	(re + capiō, 267), to re-
occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisus, to	cover, receive.
cut down, to kill.	redūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus
Persa, -ae, m. a Persian.	(re + dūcō, 264), to lead
pervenīō, -ire, -vēni, -ventū-	or bring back.
rus (per + veniō, 276), to	revocō, -āre (re + vocō, 80),
arrive.	to recall.
Pharnabāzus, -ī, Pharnaba-	satis, adv. enough, suffi-
zus (a Persian satrap).	ciently.

¹ Rare in the singular.

² With the accu. of person and the dative of thing.

sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsurus, vincō, -ere, vici, victus, to
to be aware of, perceive. conquer (victor, 158; vic-

Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily. tōria, 111).

simul atque (āc), conj. as soon as.

284 1. Alcibiadēs honōrēs māximē cupiēbat, bella terrā
 marique fēliciter gerēbat; neque erat is quī facile terrērē-
 tur. 2. Postquam Alcibiadēs in Siciliam pervēnit, nāvis
 ā magistrātibus Athēniēnsibus praemissa est, quae eum
 redūcerēt. 3. Sed Alcibiadēs mōrēs Athēniēnsium satis
 cōgnōvit; itaque simul atque in Italiā pervēnit, ad
 hostīs Athēniēnsium fugiuit nē interficerētur. 4. Postea
 ad Persās fugere coactus est; tum suōs civīs ita adiuvā-
 bat ut dēnique revocātus, classī praeficerētur. 5. Hōc in
 imperiō tantam classem expēdīvit ut plērāsque urbēs
 Asiae reciperet quae in potestātem hostium vēnerant.
 6. Nēmō est quī nōn audiat dē victōriīs Alcibiadis, nēmō
 quī eum vidēre nōn cupiat; nam simul āc dē eius adventū
 sēnsērunt, omnēs ad portum contendērunt. 7. Postquam
 Athēniēnsēs victi sunt, in Asiā fugere coactus est Alci-
 biades. Sed nōn erat is quī patriam liberāre nōn cupe-
 ret; itaque ā Pharnabāzo petiuit ut ad rēgem Persārū
 mitterētur. 8. Tum Lacedaemoniī eum prohibēre statuē-
 runt ā rēge auxilium petere; itaque paucī clam praemissi
 sunt qui eum occiderent; aedificium in quō erat incendē-
 runt.

285 1. Who was there who did not hurry to the harbor, to
 see Alcibiades and to hear his voice? 2. By the advice
 of Alcibiades the Lacedaemonians sent forward men to
 take possession of a citadel. 3. Alcibiades was aware of
 the plans of the magistrates, but he was not a man to be
 frightened. 4. As soon as their foes had defeated the
 Athenians, he fled to the Persians, in order that he might
 not be killed. 5. Men were sent to set fire to the build-
 ing in which Alcibiades was and to kill him. 6. So this

man who had been the most famous general the Athenians had known, was cut down in a most undeserved death. 7. Why did his citizens drive him from his native land and not defend him against his enemies?

READING EXERCISE

The Battle of Marathon

286 Postquam Athēniēnsēs haec cōgnōvērunt, nūntium ad Lacedaemoniōs mīsērunt quī peteret ut quam celerrimē auxilium mitterent. Sed propter¹ diēs festōs² Athēniēnsīs statim adiuvāre eis nōn licēbat. Itaque nūlla civitās auxilium dedit praeter³ Plataeēnsīs⁴; ea civitās mille milītēs mīsīt. Quōrum adventū decem milia armātōrum⁵ complēta sunt.⁶ Huic exercituī sunt praefectī decem dūcēs, in quibus princeps erat Miltiadēs. Hic cēteris persuāsīt ut cōpiās ex urbe in campum Marathōnium statim dūcerent locōque idōneō castra facerent. Ubi is diēs vēnit quō Miltiadēs summum imperium habēbat, aciem ita instrūxit⁷ ut longitūdinem⁸ Persārum aciēi aequāret⁹ sed in mediā¹⁰ aciē ordinēs minus firmī¹¹ essent quam in cornibus. Quamquam Athēniēnsēs numerō inferiōrēs erant, nōn dubitābant quīn Persās vincere possent.¹² Itaque ubi sīgnum datum est, contrā hostis māximā virtūte properābant; in mediā aciē barbarī superiōrēs erant; sed postquam Athēniēnsēs et Plataeēnsēs, quī in cornibus Persās vicerant, in eōs quī mediam Athē-

¹ Prep. with accu., *on account of*.

² *Festival*.

³ Prep. with accu., *with the exception of*.

⁴ *Men of Plataea* (a city in southern Boeotia).

⁵ *armātī, armed men*.

⁶ *complēō, -ēre, to make up*.

⁷ *instruō, -ere, to draw up*.

⁸ *longitūdō, -inis, length (longus)*.

⁹ *aequō, -āre, to equal*.

¹⁰ *medius, -a, -um, middle of*.

¹¹ *firmus, -a, -um, strong*.

¹² Impf. subj. of *possum, to be able*.

niēnsium aciem pellēbant, impetum fēcērunt, māgnam partem eōrum occīdērunt; reliquī nōn castra sed nāvīs petēbant. Quārum septem cēpērunt Athēniēnsēs. Numquam parva manus tantās cōpiās fugāverat: decemplex¹ numerum hostium vicerant Graeci.

LESSON XXXVI

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

287 VERBS having Passive forms but Active meanings are called Deponents.

288 Learn the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of *hortor* and *vereor* (484).

289 SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERBS OF FEARING

EXAMPLES

1. *Vereor* (*veritus sum*) *nē* *I fear (I have feared) that he may come.*
2. *Verēbar* (*veritus sum*) *ut* *I was fearing (I feared) that he might not come.*

(a) Notice that the clauses introduced by *nē* and *ut* are the objects of the introductory verbs, and are therefore also called Substantive Clauses, like similar clauses of Purpose (258) and of Result (268).

¹ *decemplex, -icis, ten times.*

(b) Notice also that after a verb of fearing **nē** means *that* or *lest*, **ut** means *that* *not*.¹

- 290** *Rule.*—Substantive Clauses with verbs of Fearing are introduced by **nē**, *that*, **ut**, *that not*.

W. 516; B. 296, 2; AG. 331, f.; H. 567.

291

VOCABULARY

cōnor , -āri, -ātus, <i>to try</i> .	mūniō , -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itus, <i>to</i>
cotidiē , adv. (quot + diē) <i>daily</i> .	<i>fortify</i> .
Ēlis , -idis, f. <i>Elis</i> (a district in the western Peloponnesus).	nōnnūlli , -ae, -a, <i>some, a few</i> .
expellō , -ere, -puli, -pulsus (ex + pello, 276), <i>to drive out</i> .	ob , prep. with accu., <i>on account of</i> .
incolumis , -e, <i>safe, uninjured</i> . ²	pedes , -itis, m. <i>foot soldier</i> .
inquit , ³ <i>said he</i> (etc.).	poena , -ae, f. <i>penalty</i> .
invitus , -a, -um, <i>unwilling</i> . ²	premō , -ere, pressī, pressus, <i>to press, oppress</i> .
Lacedaemōn , -onis, f. <i>Sparta</i> .	quot , adj. indeclin. <i>how many? as many as</i> (compare tot, 264).
libertās , -tātis, f. <i>liberty, freedom</i> .	supplicium , -ī, n. <i>punishment</i> .
	vehementer , adv. <i>violently, exceedingly</i> .

- 292** 1. Alcibiadēs vehementer verēbātur nē odiō supplicisq̄ue premerētur. 2. "Alcibiadem hortēmur," inquit

¹ The reason for this apparent reversal of the meanings of the two particles is that originally the clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** were independent, the Subjunctive being the Optative (241): **vereor**, *I am fearful*; **ut veniat**, *may he come* (but my fear is that he will not); **vereor: nē veniat**, *may he not come* (but I fear he will). In the development of the Latin language the originally independent clauses became dependent, so that we are obliged to translate as indicated above.

² This may often be conveniently translated by an adverb.

³ This is the only common form of the defective verb **inquam**, *say I*, inserted in direct quotations.

eius inimicus, "ut in prōvinciam contendat, quō eum facilius premāmus." 3. Invītus Alcibiadēs urbem reliquit; plērique enim cīvēs inimicī erant et eum occidere cupiēbant. 4. Alcibiadēs ab custōdibus fūgit nē poenās dare cōgerētur, atque incolumis primum in Ēlidem, deinde Lacedaemonem¹ pervēnit. 5. Ibi magistrātibus Lacedaemoniōrum persuāsit ut peditēs equitēsque mitterent quī arcem Athēniēnsium mūnirent. 6. Sed simul atque hostēs virtūtem Alcibiadis cōgnōverunt, veritī sunt nē ob patriae amōrem Athēniēnsium amicitiam rursus petere cōnārētur. 7. Itaque nōnnūllī Alcibiadem interficere cupiēbant; verēbantur enim nē ā cīvibus revocārētur et militēs suōs iterum ex patriā suā expelleret. 8. "Utinam Alcibiadēs in nostrā patriā esset. Nēmō est enim quī fēlicius sapientiusque rem pūblicam gerat." 9. Alcibiadēs cotīdiē operam dedit ut Athēniēnsēs libertātem reciperent nēve² in potestāte Lacedaemoniōrum essent. 10. Quot militēs eā pūgnā amīsīt? Multa milia hominum amīsīt, atque etiam plūrēs equōs scūtaque.

- 293 1. They feared that Alcibiades would run away and come in safety to the Persian king. 2. Alcibiades sailed to Sicily against his will, for he greatly feared that he would be oppressed by his enemies. 3. They attempted to persuade the magistrates to send a ship at once. 4. The magistrates ordered the messengers to bring Alcibiades back to Greece. 5. Alcibiades fled in order that he might not be carried to Greece and made to suffer punishment. 6. "Let us have a few soldiers to fortify this place; this garrison is not large enough to deter the neighboring tribes from attacking the camp." 7. When they saw Alcibiades unharmed, they could hardly be prevented from carrying him to the city in their arms.³

¹ Compare 236, 10. ² Nēve (nē + ve) before vowels, neu before consonants, is used to introduce the second member of a purpose clause when negative. ³ manus.

LESSON XXXVII

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND
FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

- 294 LEARN the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of *sequor* and *potior* (484).

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

- 295 Semi-Dependent Verbs have Active forms in the Present System and Passive forms in the Perfect System, keeping their Active meanings throughout. There are but four Semi-Deponents :

audeō, audēre, ausus, to dare.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus, to rejoice.

soleō, solēre, solitus, to be wont.

fidō, fidere, fisus,¹ to trust.

296

ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS

EXAMPLES

1. *Hōc cōnsiliō ūtitur.* *He uses this advice.*
2. *Omnibus rēbus fruī.* *To enjoy all things.*
3. *Urbe hostium potītī sunt.* *They got possession of the enemy's city.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Ablative is used where in English we use the Accusative (Objective)

¹ The compound *cōnfidō, to have confidence*, is much more common than the simple *fidō*.

case. Such ablatives are Ablatives of Instrument or of Means (109) and are used with five deponents and their compounds.

- 297** *Rule.*—The Ablative is used with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vēscor*, and their compounds.¹

W. 387; B. 218, 1; AG. 249; H. 477.

298

VOCABULARY

<i>accipiō</i> , -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (ad + <i>capiō</i> , 267), to receive, get.	<i>numquam</i> , adv. (<i>nē</i> + <i>umquam</i>), never.
<i>Aemilius</i> , -i, m. <i>Aemilius</i> .	<i>periculōsus</i> , -a, -um, full of risk, dangerous.
<i>Āpūlia</i> , -ae, f. <i>Apulia</i> .	<i>probō</i> , -āre, to approve.
<i>cōnsequor</i> , -i, -secūtus (<i>cum</i> + <i>sequor</i>), to overtake.	<i>proficiscor</i> , -i, -fectus, to set out.
<i>dolor</i> , -ōris, m. <i>grief</i> .	<i>quidam</i> , <i>quaedam</i> , <i>quoddam</i> , ³
<i>ēiusmodi</i> , ² adj. of that sort, such.	<i>a</i> , a certain.
<i>experior</i> , -iri, -pertus, to try, prove.	<i>umquam</i> , adv. ever.
<i>medius</i> , -a, -um, middle, middle of.	<i>ūtor</i> , -i, ūsus, to use.
	<i>Varrō</i> , -ōnis, m. <i>Varro</i> .

- 299** 1. Simul atque Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnit, contrā eum summā celeritatē profecti sunt cōsulēs, Aemilius et Varrō. 2. Aemiliō minus periculōsum vidēbātur eā ratiōne bellī morāque ūti quā Fabius ūsus erat; sed Varrō ācriōra cōnsilia sequi solēbātur. 3. Aemilius, quī verēbātur nē Rōmānī superārentur, invitus pūgnāvit; Rōmānī ingenti clāde pulsī sunt. 4. Numquam gravius vulnus accēpit rēs pūblica; plērīque dūcēs tribūnīque indīgnā

¹ As *fungor*, to perform, and *vēscor*, to feed, are not common in the Latin authors which pupils first read, they are not used in this book; but the complete rule should be learned for future convenience.

² The genitives *ēius* and *modī* written as one word.

³ Declined in full, 475.

morte interfecti sunt atque Hannibal magnā praedā potitus est. 5. Aemilium mediā in pūgnā vulneratum vidit tribūnus quidam, quī hortabatur ut equum suum caperet et fugeret. 6. "Etiam sine tuā morte," inquit tribūnus, "satis doloris est. Nihil impedit quin fugiās, nēmō tē cōsequetur. 7. Sed cōsul tribūnō imperavit ut magistratibus renūtiāret ut urbem mūnirent. 8. Quot hominēs occisi sunt hāc pūgnā? Multa milia; numquam enim Rōmānī eiusmodi clādem experti sunt. 9. Lēgātus Hannibalem hortabatur ut ad urbem contenderet. "Diē quartō," inquit, "victor sub moenibus eris." 10. Ubi hōc cōsiliū nōn probāvit Hannibal, dixit ille, "Superrare hostis scīs, victoriā ūti nōn cūpis."

- 300** 1. The consuls set out immediately, in order that they might follow the enemy. 2. Hannibal did not know how to take advantage of¹ the victory, for the Romans were in his power. 3. Aemilius was not accustomed to employ dispatch, and did not try to overtake the enemy's foot-soldiers with his cavalry. 4. Nothing prevents you from taking my horse and fleeing, that you may not meet an undeserved death. 5. At daybreak Hannibal took possession of the Roman camp; the Romans did not attempt to defend it. 6. The consul who had been put in command of the foot was afraid he should not conquer Hannibal. 7. How many soldiers were slain in this battle? So many thousands that this was the greatest disaster which a Roman army ever experienced.

¹ I. e., *to use*.

LESSON XXXVIII

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE
SUBJUNCTIVE

301 LEARN the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of **sum** (485) and in the four Conjugations, including deponent verbs (479–484).

302 Among the constructions thus far learned the chief use of the Perfect Subjunctive is in Result Clauses where after an introductory verb in a secondary tense the Perfect Subjunctive states the result as a simple fact, and corresponds to the Perfect Indicative of an independent statement: **Galli ita perterriti sunt ut nihil fēcerint**, *The Gauls were so thoroughly frightened that they did nothing.*

(a) Here **fēcerint** corresponds to **fēcērunt** of a simple statement. If the imperfect **facerent** had been used in the Result Clause, it would have indicated the continuance of the action, *were doing*.

303 The Pluperfect Tense of the Subjunctive may be used in wishes referring to the past (the Optative-Subjunctive, 241): **utinam haec fēcisset**, *Would that he had done this.*

(a) The Pluperfect like the Imperfect of the Optative Subjunctive is always introduced by **utinam**.

304 Naturally both the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used in Characterizing Clauses (281):

1. *Is est qui nihil timuerit.* *He is a man who has feared nothing.*
2. *Is erat qui nihil timuisset.* *He was a man who had feared nothing.*

(a) The other important uses of the Perfect and Pluperfect will be noticed in later lessons.

305

VOCABULARY

<i>audeō, -ēre, ausus, to dare.</i>	<i>moror, -āri, -ātus, to delay.</i>
<i>cōnfido, -ere, -fissus (cum + fidō), to have confidence.</i>	<i>obliviscor, -i, -lītus, to forget.²</i>
<i>cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily.</i>	<i>paene, adv. almost.</i>
<i>dēspērō, -āre, to despair.</i>	<i>pecūnia, -ae, f. money.</i>
<i>dēsum, -esse, -fui, to be lacking, to fail.¹</i>	<i>perterreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus (per + terreō, 252), to terrify.</i>
<i>fruo, -i, frūctus, to enjoy.</i>	<i>sic, adv. so.³</i>
<i>loquor, -i, locūtus, to talk.</i>	<i>tam, adv. so.⁴</i>

- 306 1. Nūntiō hūius clādīs Rōmānī sic perterriti sunt ut nihil facere nihilque dicere ausi sint. 2. Māgnū dolōrem accēpērunt civēs; nēmō loquēbātur, omnēs tam tristēs erant ut nēmō contrā hostis proficisci auderet. 3. Hannibal tamen nōn erat is qui victōriā ūti sciret; atque nunc quoque victōriā frui, nō ūti, cupiēbat. 4. Utinam morātus esset noster exercitus; nē Fabi eiusque bellī ratiōnis obliviscāmur. 5. Nec tamen dēspērāvērunt Rōmānī; omnia faciēbant nē libertātem potestātemque amitterent nēve in aciē vincerentur. 6. Quod arma quibus pūgnārent deerant, ex templis scūta telaque hostium cēpērunt quibus ūterentur. 7. Pecūniā telaque quibus

¹ With the dative, not accusative.

² With the genitive of the object. Compare 156.

³ Modifying verbs.

⁴ Modifying adjectives and adverbs, not verbs. Compare *ita*, 182.

utēbantur,¹ senātus suā operā expēdivit, ut urbs facile dēfenderētur. 8. Hannibal fidei² Rōmānae sic cōfīdēbat ut captīvos eōrum ad urbem sine custōdibus mīserit. 9. Utinam castris hostium potītī essēmus; atque nunc cēterōs statim cōsequāmur nē hīs auxilium darent. 10. Rōmānī cum eis nātiōnibus pāene cotidiānis proeliis pūgnāre solēbant ut adventū tot mīlium novōrum hostium nōn perterritī sint.

- 307** 1. Hannibal acted with so little speed that the Romans did not despair of the state. 2. Hannibal knew how to enjoy a victory, but not how to use one.³ 3. Would that the Romans had followed the advice of Aemilius! 4. The advice of Aemilius was to delay and not to fight, for to engage with the enemy at once was dangerous. 5. Because young men were lacking, the senate ordered the slaves to be liberated and armed. 6. The Romans lost so many men in this battle that they no longer had an army. 7. They no longer had enough foot-soldiers to send against Hannibal. 8. They were not a people who had been accustomed to be afraid that they would be conquered.

¹ How does the indic. here differ from the subj. in the preceding sentence?

² Dat. with cōfīdēbat; translate by the English objective.

³ Omit in translating.

LESSON XXXIX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

308

SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. Si adest, bene est. | <i>If he is here, it is well.</i> |
| 2. Si aderat, bene erat. | <i>If he was here, it was well.</i> |
| 3. Si adfuit, bene fuit. | <i>If he has been (was) here, it has been (was) well.</i> |

(a) Notice that the time of these sentences is either Present or Past, and that nothing is implied as to whether the subject actually is, was, or has been here. Such conditions are called *Simple Present* or *Past Conditional Sentences*.

(b) The Condition, or Subordinate Clause, of the Sentence is frequently called the *Prótasis*; the Conclusion, or Principal Clause, is called the *Apódosis*.

309

Rule.—In Simple Present or Past Conditional Sentences, implying nothing as to the fact, the Indicative is used in both *Protasis* and *Apodosis*.

W. 553; B. 302; AG. 306; H. 574.

310

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. Si adesset, bene esset. | <i>If he were here, it would be well.</i> |
| 2. Si adfuisset, bene fuisset. | <i>If he had been here, it would have been well.</i> |

(a) Notice that these conditional sentences imply that the supposition is not true, i. e., that he is not, or was not here. Such conditions are called *Conditions Contrary to Fact*.

(b) Notice further that the Imperfect Subjunctive refers to Present time, the Pluperfect to Past.

- 311** *Rule.*—In Present and Past Conditional Sentences contrary to fact, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to Present, the Pluperfect to Past Time.

W. 557; B. 304; AG. 308; H. 579.

312FUTURE CONDITIONS¹

EXAMPLES

1. **Si aderit (adfuerit), bene erit.** *If he is (shall be, shall have been) here, it will be well.*
2. **Si adsit, bene sit.** *If he should be here, it would be well.*

(a) Notice that these conditional sentences both refer to Future time and therefore state the condition as Possible, rather than as a simple fact or one impliedly false. In the first sentence the Future (or Future Perfect) Indicative states the condition more vividly than the Present Subjunctive does in the second. The first sentence is called a *More Vivid Future Condition*, the second a *Less Vivid Future Condition*.

(b) In More Vivid Future Conditions the Future Perfect Indicative is very common in the Protasis, as the Latin language is more precise than the English. We generally use the Present Indicative here to represent both the Future and the Future Perfect.

- 313** *Rule.*—In More Vivid Future Conditions the Future Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis; in Less Vivid Future Conditions the Present Subjunctive.

W. 553, 555; B. 302, 303; AG. 307; H. 574, 576.

¹ The pupil will remember that conditional sentences with the Indicative have been freely used in many of the preceding exercises.

314

VOCABULARY

aequus, -a, -um, equal, fair, <i>level.</i>	nanciscor, -i, nactus, to find.
aetās, -ātis, f. age.	necesse, adj. necessary.
dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus (di + mittō, 260), to dis- miss.	nisi, conj. unless.
etsi, conj. even if, although.	pedester, -tris, -tre, foot (pedes, 291).
graviter, adv. heavily, se- verely.	pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, to put, place.¹
Hispanus, -a, -um, Spanish.	propter, prep. with accu. on account of.
māne, adv. early in the morning.	rēgius, -a, -um, royal.
morior, -i, mortuus, to die.	respondeō, -ēre, -ndi, -nsus, to answer.
	Scipiō, -ōnis, m. Scipio.

- 315** 1. Scipiō olim magistrātum quendam petivit, sed propter aetātem hunc habēre eī nōn licuit. 2. "Sī mē," inquit, "omnēs civēs magistrātum facere cupiunt, satis annōrum habeo." 3. Scipiō tantā virtūte ēgit ut vitam patris ex hostium tēlis servāverit. 4. Nam pater graviter vulnerātus erat, ut nisi eum Scipiō celeriter periculō liberāvisset, in hostium manūs vēnisset mortuusque esset. 5. Ubi iuvenēs quidam dē rē publicā dēspērāvērunt, Scipiō respondit, "Sī reī publicae deeritis, hūius gladi virtutem experiētis." 6. Sī Scipiō aequissimō locō māne castra posuerit, pedestribus cōpiis paene cotidie cum hostibus pūgnabit. 7. Etsi ea natiō nōn magna erat, tamen apud eōs multa arma nōnnūllōsque captivōs nactus est imperātor. 8. Erat inter captivōs Hispanōs puer rēgius insignisque, quōcum² Scipiō pauca loquēbātur. 9. Scipiō probāvit ea quae puer dīxit, atque ubi eī equum equitēsque dedit quī eum tūtō dēdūcerent, domum dimi-

¹ castra pōnere, to pitch camp.

² cum is regularly attached to the abl. of the Personal and Relative Pronouns.

sit. 10. Si beātus esse cupīs, bonīs vitāe sapienter ūti et frui necesse est.

- 316** 1. If Scipio had not acted with great haste, his father would have died in the hands of the enemy. 2. Scipio's father was so severely wounded that he almost died. 3. Scipio's years were not many; still he would receive from the citizens the magistracy if he should seek it. 4. "Unless you follow my advice and defend the state," said Scipio, "my sword will make¹ you drive the enemy out." 5. If the enemy be not terrified, they will pitch camp early in the morning in a level place. 6. Scipio persuaded the youth who was brought to him not to be afraid. 7. "My father died," said the boy, "so that I followed my mother's brother to the war." 8. If you should use and enjoy wisely the goods of life, you would be happy.

LESSON XL

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

PARADIGMS

317

	FIRST PERSON	SINGULAR SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
NOM.	ego	tū	—
GEN.	meī	tui	sui
DAT.	mihi, mī	tibi	sibi
ACCU.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
ABL.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

¹ efficiō with a substantive clause.

PLURAL			
NOM. (VOC.)	nōs	vōs	—
GEN.	nostrum, nostri	vestrum, vestri	sui
DAT.	nōbis	vōbis	sibi
ACCU.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
ABL.	nōbis	vōbis	sē, sēsē

(a) The First and Second Personal Pronouns are used only for emphasis; *ego haec laudō, tū ista laudās, I praise this, you praise that.* Ordinarily the form of the verb alone indicates the subject in these two persons.

(b) **Nostrum** and **vestrum** usually denote the whole of which the modified word is a part: *quis nostrum? Who of us?* **Nostri** and **vestri** are generally used as Objective Genitives: *memōria nostri, Memory of us.*

(c) There is properly speaking no Personal Pronoun of the Third Person. Its place is taken by the Demonstratives *ille* and *is* (123, 135).

(d) The Reflexive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are supplied from the Personal Pronouns: *ego mē laudo, I praise myself; tū tē laudās, You praise yourself.*

318

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

meus, my	noster, our	for the First Person
tuus, your (thy)	vester, your	for the Second Person
suus, his own, their own		for the Third Person

(a) These are adjectives, which have been already used, and are declined like **bonus** and **niger**. But the Voc. Sing. Masc. of **meus** is **mī**.

(b) **Suus** is used only in a Reflexive sense, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands: *suum filium laudat, He praises his own son; filium illius laudat, He praises his (another man's) son,*

319 The following table shows the correspondence of the Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, and Demonstrative Pronouns.

	PERSONAL	REFLEXIVE	POSSESSIVE	DEMONSTRATIVE
FIRST PERSON	ego	mei	meus, noster	hic
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui	tuns, vester	iste
THIRD PERSON	(ille, is)	sui	suus	ille

320

VOCABULARY

aut (<i>aut . . . aut</i>), conj.	iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussus, to <i>either (either . . . or). order.²</i>
dēsistō, -ere, -stiti, —, to <i>cease, cease from, give up.</i>	iūdicō, -āre, to judge, con- <i>sider, (iūdex, 144.)</i>
dignus -a, -um, worthy.	māgnitūdō, -inis, f. size, <i>greatness.</i>
Hasdrubal, -alis, m. Hasdru- <i>bal (a famous Carthagin-</i> <i>ian).</i>	modo, adv. only.
idem, eadem, idem,¹ the same.	nē . . . quidem, adv. not <i>even.</i>
ipse, ipsa, ipsum,¹ self, very.	nōn modo . . . sed etiam, <i>not only . . . but also.</i>
iste, ista, istud,¹ that (of <i>yours).</i>	silentium, -i, n. silence.

321 1. Multitūdō eadem Hispānōrum Scipiōnem ingenti clāmōre rēgem appellāvit; sed ille nōn passus est sē regiō nōmine appellāri. 2. Postquam silentium eōs facere iussit, summā auctōritāte dīxit, "Nōmen imperātōris quō mē militēs mei appellāverunt, mihī est māximus honor. 3. Rōmānī nē nōmen quidem rēgium patī solent. Etsi vōs hōc nōmen māximum dignissimumque iūdicātis, tamen necesse est vōs³ etiam invitōs cōnsiliō dēsistere."

¹ These are declined in full, 475. Compare with other demonstrative pronouns.

² Followed by the accu. and infin.: *iubeo tē haec facere, I order you to do this.* Compare *imperō*, 191.

³ Accu. subject of *dēsistere*; translate, *that you, etc.*

4. Tum sēnsērunt nōn modo illi sed etiam cēteri māgnitūdinem eius animī, ut eum rēgem appellāre dēstiterint. 5. "Quot vestrum hōc animō sunt? Sī cōnsilium istud probārem, nōn dubitārem quā nōmen illud accipere necesse esset." 6. Deinde Scipiō proficisci parābat, ut dūrō tempore annī māgnū agmen in Africā trādūceret. 7. Lēgatiōnem cum dōnīs ad rēgem mīsīt; sed nōn poterat¹ ei persuādere ut fidem, nisi cum ipsō dūce Rōmānō, aut daret aut acciperet. 8. Idem effēcīt ut eō tempore Hasdrubal ipse, quī Hispāniā expulsus erat, ad hunc portum pervenīret. 9. Numquam tuī oblivīscar, etsī aetās mihi longissima sit. .

- 322** 1. I should accept the name of king for love of you, if the Romans would allow me to do so. 2. Scipio ordered the Spaniards not to call him king against his wishes.² 3. Because the Spaniards recognized his nobility of spirit, they gave up their plan. 4. I do not approve of your plan; let them not call me by that name. 5. If he had not sent an embassy to the king, he not only would have come himself, but would also have given up the hostages. 6. If you wish to exchange³ pledges with me, it will be necessary for you to come yourself. 7. After a short silence, he said, "I shall not forget you, even if you forget me." 8. You are eager to adopt⁴ either that plan of yours or this of mine?⁵

323

READING EXERCISE

The Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis

Postquam Darēus dē pūgnā Marathōniā certior est factus, Graeciam vincere multō magis cupiēbat. Itaque per civitatēs Asiae lēgātōs mīsīt quī cōpiās et nāvīs longās

¹ Imperfect indic. of *possum*, to be able.

² *invitus*.

³ Use *dō* and *accipiō*; compare 321, 7.

⁴ *capere*.

⁵ Simply *hic*; compare 124 (a).

et equōs et frūmentum parārī iubērent. Sed mox Darēus moritur. Deinde Xerxēs rēgnat.¹ Quamquam² in animō nōn habēbat³ bellum Graeciae inferre,⁴ tamen Mardonius, cūius auctōritās apud eum erat māxima, ei persuāsit ut patris cōnsilia persequerētur.⁵ Per quattuor⁶ annōs māgnū exercitū omnīsque rēs exercitūi necessāriās parābat ut quīntō⁷ annō ingentibus cōpiis proficiscerētur. Ubi rēx cum peditibus equitibusque ad Thermopylārū⁸ angustias⁹ pervēnit, castra ante eas pōnere est coāctus, quod in angustīs erant Graeci, quī parātī erant prohibēre eum suōs militēs in Graeciam dūcere. Cēteri Graeci, māgnō numerō hostium perterriti,¹⁰ ex angustīs fugere et Isthmum mūnīre cupiēbant; sed Leōnidas hanc sententiam nōn probābat, et cum Lacedaemoniis suis manēbat.

Ubi nōnnūllōs diēs rēx morātus est, suōs militēs impetum facere iussit. Quamquam summā audaciā pūgnāverunt, tamen tanta erat caedēs eōrum ut dēnique proeliō dēstiterint ac sē in castra recēperint. Neque reliquī plūs contrā Graecōs effēcērunt. Ubi iam dē victōriā Xerxēs dēspērābat, ei Graecus quīdam viam per montēs indicāvit. Eā nocte Persae profectī sunt ut Graecōs ā tergō¹¹ adorīrentur.¹² Leōnidas omnīs praeter¹³ Lacedaemoniōs dimiserat. Primā lūce Persae in eōs impetum fēcērunt: parva manus Graecōrum fortissimē pūg-

¹ The present indicative is often thus used in narration to record incidents as they occur. It is best known as the Annalistic Present.

² *Although.*

³ Compare *in animō esse*, 193, 6.

⁴ *Infin., to bring on*, with dat.

¹¹ *In the rear.*

⁵ *persequor*, to follow out.

¹² *adorior*, -irī, to attack.

⁶ *Four.*

¹³ *Prep. with accu., except.*

⁷ *Fifth.*

⁸ *Thermopylae*, a pass from Thessaly to southern Greece.

⁹ *angustiae*, pass.

¹⁰ *Perf. pass. partic., not indic.*

nāvit, sed omnēs occisī sunt. Hic in ūnō locō sepultī,¹ semper in māximō honōre apud suōs erant.

Paulō post apud Salaminem² pūgnam nāvālem³ cum classe Persicā commiserunt Graeci, qui cōnsiliō Themistoclis⁴ hōc locō dīmicāre coactī sunt. Multī enim ā Salamīne ad Isthmum fugere in animō habuerant. Māior pars nāvium Persārum interiit;⁵ multae ab Athēniēnsibus sociisque sunt captae. Ita Graecia est liberāta.

LESSON XLI

THE USES OF THE INFINITIVE

324 REVIEW the Present Infinitives and learn the Perfect and Future Infinitives of the model verbs (479-485).

(a) Notice that the Future Active Infinitive is made up of the Future Active Participle and *esse*; the Perfect Passive of the Perfect Passive Participle and *esse*. These participles, it should be remembered, are declined like *bonus*.

325 SUBJECT AND OBJECT INFINITIVES

The Infinitive in Latin, as in English, is a Verbal Noun and has neither person nor number. It is chiefly used as Subject or Object.

¹ Perf. pass. partic. of *sepeliō*, to bury.

² *Salamis*, -inis, an island south of Athens.

³ *nāvālis*, -e, compare *nāvis*.

⁴ *Themistoclēs*, -is, the famous Athenian general.

⁵ *Was lost*.

326

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Urbem dēfendere erit periculōsum. | <i>To defend the city will be dangerous.</i> |
| 2. Urbem mūnīre cupit. | <i>He wishes to defend the city.</i> |
| 3. Urbem mūniri cupit. | <i>He wishes the town to be defended.</i> |
| 4. Urbem esse māgnam cupit. | <i>He wishes the city to be large.</i> |
| 5. Urbs māgna esse dicitur. | <i>The city is said to be large.</i> |
| 6. Urbs dēfēnsa esse dicitur. | <i>The city is said to have been defended.</i> |

(a) Notice that in sentence 1 the Infinitive is the Subject of *erit*; in 2, 3, and 4 it is the Object of *cupit*; and that in 5 and 6 it simply completes the meaning of the sentence. Such infinitives as those in sentences 2-6 are frequently called *Complementary Infinitives*, especially when, as in sentence 2, the infinitive has no subject. All these constructions are common in English, so that they have been freely used in the preceding lessons.

(b) Notice that in sentences 3 and 4 the accusative *urbem* is the Subject of the infinitives, and that in sentence 4 the predicate adjective *māgnam* is therefore accusative. But in sentences 5 and 6, in which the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the finite verb and therefore nominative, the predicate adjective *māgna* and the participle *dēfēnsa* are nominative.

327 *Rule.*—The Infinitive may be used as Subject or Object of a Finite Verb.

W. 622-629; B. 326-332; AG. 270-272; H. 613-615.

328 *Rule.*—The Accusative may be used as the Subject of an Infinitive.

W. 322; B. 184; AG. 240, *f.*; H. 415.

329

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

EXAMPLES

DIRECT

INDIRECT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tū urbem dēfēdis.
<i>You are* defending the city.</i> | Dicit tē urbem dēfendere.
<i>He says that you are defending the city.</i> |
| 2. Ego urbem dēfēdi.
<i>I defended the city.</i> | Dixit mē urbem dēfēdisse.
<i>He said that I defended the city.</i> |
| 3. Urbs dēfēsa est.
<i>The city has been defended.</i> | Dixit urbem dēfēnsam esse.
<i>He said that the city had been defended.</i> |
| 4. Urbem dēfēdēbat.
<i>He was defending the city.</i> | Dicit sē urbem dēfēdisse.
<i>He says that he defended the city.</i> |
| 5. Hic urbem dēfēdet.
<i>This man will defend the city.</i> | Dixit hunc urbem dēfēnsū esse.
<i>He said that this man would defend the city.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Infinitives with Subjects in the Accusative are Objects of the introductory verb, but at the same time represent the quoted thought or words of some person, as is shown by the left-hand column. When a person's thought or words are thus quoted after a verb of Saying or Thinking, the construction is called *Indirect Discourse*. Compare 326, 5 and 6.

(b) The Tenses of the Infinitive have no independent time of their own, but their time depends on that of the leading verb, as is shown by the examples given above.

330

Rule.—The Present Infinitive expresses the same time as that of the leading verb, the Perfect Infinitive time before, and the Future Infinitive time after the time of the leading verb.

W. 632-635; B. 270 a-c; AG. 288; H. 617-620.

331

VOCABULARY

alius, -a, -ud, another.¹

arbitror, -āri, -ātus, to think.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. centurion.

**circum, prep. with accu.
around, about.**

**cōstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitū-
tus, to establish, place, sta-
tion, determine.**

**difficultās, -ātis, f. difficulty
(difficilis, 196).**

**imperitus, -a, -um (in +
peritus, 264), unskilled.**

**iniquus, -a, -um (in + ae-
quus, 314), unequal, un-
even, unfair.**

**paulum, adv. a little, some-
what (paulō, 199).**

procul, adv. far off.

**prōgredior, -i, -gressus, to
advance.**

putō, -āre, to think.

**quisquam, —, quidquam,
indefinite pron. any one,
anything.²**

sōl, -is, m. sun.

spērō, -āre, to hope.

**Suēbi, -ōrum, m. The Suebi
(a German people).**

**suprā, adv., and prep. with
accu. above, beyond.**

tālis, -e, such.

**tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus,
to lift up, carry off, re-
move, destroy.**

332

1. Ipse Caesar cōpiās pedestris in Germaniam dūcere castraque pōnere cōstituit paulō suprā eum locum ubi antea peditēs trādūxerat. 2. Arbitrābātur hostis, imperitōs hominēs, aut iniquō locō proelium commissūrōs aut dē victōriā dēspērātūrōs esse. 3. Hōc modō spērābat sē castris eōrum argentōque omnī potitūrum esse. 4. Sōl occultātus erat nūbibus ut periculōsum difficileque esse putāret tāli caelō proficīscī; sed primōs ordinēs paulum prōgredi iussit. 5. Mōs hārum civitātum fuisse dīcitur, ut circum sē finis vastātōs vacuōsque ab incolis habērent; hōc modō sē tūtiōrēs esse arbitrābantur. 6. Caesar, simul atque certior factus est Suēbōs iniquō locō bellum committere nōn audēre, longius prōgredi cōstituit. 7. Nē timōrem barbaris tolleret, turrim nōn procul ā ripā cōn-

¹ Declined in full, 469.

² For the declension, see 478. **Quisquam** is used in negative sentences and in questions; compare 332, 9.

stituit, centuriōnem quendam turri castrisque praefecit. 8. Postquam ipse peditēs plērōsque incolumis reduxit, ad alium bellum profectus est. Arbitrābatur illōs supplicī nōn oblitūrōs esse. 9. Ista silva est sacra deis; neque est quisquam quī sē ad finem eius umquam pervēnisse dicat aut māgnitūdinem eius cōgnōverit. 10. Sī pontem nōn incendisset, barbari arbitrātī essent eum in Germaniam prōgressūrum esse atque perterriti essent.

- 333** 1. It is a dangerous and difficult matter to follow the Suebi into such a forest. 2. He thought that the centurion had erected a tower not far from the bridge. 3. The Suebi had determined to betake themselves into the forest, nor was there any one who knew their plan. 4. If the sun had not been hidden by clouds, he would have set out on that day. 5. A little way above the bridge was a very large forest, in which there were many strange animals; this forest is said to have been sacred to the gods. 6. Caesar was informed that the Suebi would neither engage in battle nor stay where they were.¹ 7. If you wish to destroy all fear and to enjoy² quiet, you must lay waste the country about your cities.

LESSON XLII

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

334

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

EXAMPLES

DIRECT

INDIRECT

1. Quid facit?

Rogat quid faciat.
 He asks what he is doing.
 Rogāvit quid faceret.
 He asked what he was doing.

¹ Translate, in the same place.

² ūti.

2. Cūr proficiscēbātur?

Rogāvit cūr proficiscerētur.

He asked why he started.

3. Ubi vēnit?

Sciō ubi vēnerit.

I know when he came.

Sciēbam ubi vēnisset.

I knew when he came.

(a) Notice that the verbs of the direct questions in the left-hand column when quoted in the right become the Subjunctive. The Sequence of Tenses is similar to that of other subordinate clauses, 248 *b, c*. In general all questions and all subordinate clauses when quoted have their verbs in the Subjunctive.

- 335** *Rule.*—In Indirect Discourse the verb of a Declarative sentence is in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; the verb of an Interrogative, Hortatory, or Imperative Sentence, or of a Subordinate clause is in the Subjunctive.

W. 599, 605; B. 314, 315; AG. 336; H. 642, 643.

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

EXAMPLES

336 SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS¹

1. DIRECT. Sī haec facis, bene facis.

INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, sī haec { faciās, } bene facere.
Dixit } { facerēs, }

2. DIRECT. Sī haec fēcistī, bene fēcistī.

INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, sī haec { fēcēris, } bene fēcisse.
Dixit } { fēcissēs, }

337 FUTURE CONDITIONS

3. DIRECT. Sī haec { faciēs, } bene { faciēs.
-
- { faciās, }

INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, sī haec { faciās, } bene factūrum esse.
Dixit } { facerēs, }

¹ Present and Past Conditions Contrary to Fact are not frequent in Indirect Discourse and are not treated here.

(a) Notice that the verb of the Apodosis of a conditional sentence, being independent, is changed to the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse; the verb of the Protasis, being dependent, is changed to the Subjunctive, following the regular sequence of tenses.

(b) Notice also that Protases of the Simple Present and the More and the Less Vivid Future Conditions have the same Subjunctive form when quoted. The Tense of the Infinitive in the Apodosis shows in part what kind of condition was used in the Direct Discourse; but there is no way of distinguishing between the two classes of Future Conditions when quoted, except by the context.

338

VOCABULARY

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, to <i>withdraw, yield.</i>	nūllus, -a, -um, no, none.²
conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ven- tūrus (con + veniō, 276), <i>to come together, assemble.</i>	oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f. attack, <i>assault, siege (oppūgnō,</i> <i>111).</i>
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (dis + cēdō), to go away, <i>depart.</i>	ostendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntus, to <i>show.</i>
domus, -ūs, f. house, home.¹	pīlum, -ī, n. javelin.
existimō, -āre, to think.	quaerō, -ere, -sivī, -sītus, to <i>ask, enquire.</i>
fortūna, -ae, f. fortune.	revertor, revertī, reversus, to <i>return.³</i>
intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, <i>to perceive, understand.</i>	salūs, -ūtis, f. safety, life.
	undique, adv. from all sides.

339

1. Centuriō existimāvit, sī tālī tempore oppūgnātiōne dēsisteret, hostīs aut cōpiās dēductūros aut aedifi-

¹ See 465. The accu. without a preposition is used as the limit of motion like names of towns.

² Declined in full, 469.

³ Usually deponent in the present system; in the perfect system the active **revertī** is used.

cia Rōmānōrum incēnsūrōs esse. 2. Nūntium rogāvit cūr tam tristis esset. Respondit ille hostīs undique convēnisse, hastīs pīllisque armātōs, neque procul abesse. 3. Caesar, nē caedēs māgna esset, silentiō māne revertī cōstituit; nē ūnum quidem diem mānserat. 4. Ipse dux certior factus est hostīs iam discessisse, neque quisquam sciēbat ubi essent. Existimābat Caesar eōs mediam in prōvinciam profectōs esse. 5. Arbitrābātur, sī tāli tempore sōl nūbibus occultārētur, imperitōs hominēs dē salūte dēspērātūrōs et oppugnātiōne dēstitūtōs esse. 6. In tantā difficultāte dixit eīs, sī locō nōn cēderent, sē eōs incolumis domum dēductūrum esse. 7. Sī sentient necesse esse morī, māiōre fortitudīne bellī fortūnam experientur et sē fortiōrēs ostendent. 8. Quaesivit ab eīs quam ob rem māne prōgressi essent. Respondērunt sē bellī fortūnam secundā hōrā experiri cupivisse. 9. Caesar intellēxit nisi locum nātūrā mūnitum nanciscerentur, eōs numquam proelium commissūros esse.

- 340** 1. He asked the messenger where the enemy were and why they had determined to return. 2. He thought that, if he returned, the enemy would advance and try the fortune of war. 3. The centurion was informed that the enemy had gathered from all sides and would attack the tower if Caesar should fall back from his position. 4. You ask why I wish to give up¹ the attack. I think it will be dangerous to stay here, if the enemy do not withdraw. 5. He told them that, if they should show themselves brave men, they need not despair of victory and safety. 6. Not to deprive² them altogether of hope, he says that if they withdraw quickly, they will reach³ home in safety. 7. He asks how many miles distant the enemy are from the camp and how large an army they have.

¹ dēsisitō.² tollō.³ revertor.

READING EXERCISE

Roman History from 60 B. C.

Quartō annō post coniūrātiōnem Catilīnae Gāius Iūlius Caesar cum Lūciō Bibulō cōsul est factus. Datae ei sunt in quīnquennium prōvinciae, Gallia et Illyricum, deinde in alterum quīnquennium prōrogatae. Pācavit autem annīs novem paene omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est. Bis militēs Rhēnum trādūxit Germānōsque in ultimās regiōnēs sē recipere coēgit; bis etiam trāsgressus est in Brittaniam, quod inde Gallis auxilia missa erant, victorque in prōvinciam revertit. Septimō ex quō Caesar in Galliam vēnerat annō gravis oritur sēditiō; paene omnēs Galli, quōrum Vercingetorix erat dux, contrā Rōmānōs coniūrant. Sed Caesar Alesiam, quō sē hostēs recēperant, expūgnāvit et tōtam Galliam gravibus suppliciis pācavit. Interim cum Pompēiō et Crassō societatem illam rei pūblicae periculōsam renovāvit. Pompēiō etiam filiam Iūliam Caesar in mātrimonium dedit, ut eum sibi adiungeret; sed illa iam alterō annō moritur. Crassus, cui post cōsulātum quem cum Pompēiō gesserat, data est Syria et bellum Parthicum, ad Carrās, Mesopotamiae oppidum, ā dūce Parthōrum victus et interfectus est. Mox inimicī erant Caesar et Pompēius: huic illius opēs suspectae erant, illum hūius auctōritās grātiaque apud nōbilis sollicitābant.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY¹

adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-	Carrae, -ārum, f. Carrae.
tus, to join to, attach.	cōsulātus, -ūs, m. consul-
alter, -era, -erum, other, sec-	ship.
ond.	inde, adv. from that place.
bis, adv. twice.	mātrimonium, -ī, n. marriage.

¹ Proper names are not ordinarily given in the vocabularies to the reading exercises, unless they present some difficulties.

nōbilia, -e, <i>noble.</i>	Rhēnus, -i, m. <i>the Rhine.</i>
novem, (indeclin.) <i>nine.</i>	Rhodanus, -i, m. <i>the Rhone.</i>
opēs, -um, f. plur. <i>power.</i>	sēditio, -ōnis, f. <i>uprising.</i>
orior, -iri, -ortus, <i>to arise.</i>	societās, -ātis, f. <i>alliance.</i>
Parthicus, -a, -um, <i>Parthian.</i>	suspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, <i>to suspect.</i>
prōrogō, -āre, <i>to extend.</i>	trānsgredior, -ī, -gressus, <i>to</i> <i>cross.</i>
quinquennium, -i, n. <i>five years.</i>	
renovō, -āre, <i>to renew.</i>	

LESSON XLIII

THE COMPOUNDS OF SUM

342 THE only compounds of **sum** which present any peculiarities are **possum**, *can, be able*, and **prōsum**, *to be of advantage to, to help*. Learn the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive entire of these verbs (486).

(a) **Possum** is a compound of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**; therefore the **t** appears everywhere before a vowel, e. g., **potest**, **poteram**, etc. **Prōsum** is compounded of **prōd** (an old form of **prō**) and **sum**.

343 DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Peditibus occurrit. | <i>He met the infantry.</i> |
| 2. Equitātui praefuit. | <i>He was in charge of the cavalry.</i> |
| 3. Equitātui praefectus est. | <i>He has been put in command of the cavalry.</i> |
| 4. Haec tibi prōderunt. | <i>These things will be to your advantage.</i> |

(a) Notice that the Dative, not the Accusative, is used with these Verbs Compounded with the preposi-

tions *ob*, *prae*, and *prō*. Many compound Latin verbs are intransitive and have the Dative depending on them thus; but their English equivalents are often transitive.

- 344** *Rule.*—The Dative is used with many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*.

W. 332; B. 187, iii; AG. 228; H. 429.

345

VOCABULARY

<i>cōsistō</i> , -ere, -stiti, —, to	<i>praesum</i> , -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
<i>stand</i> , <i>halt</i> .	<i>to be in command of</i> .
<i>fossa</i> , -ae, f. <i>ditch</i> .	(Compare <i>praeſciō</i> , 283).
<i>interim</i> , adv. <i>meanwhile</i> .	<i>profectiō</i> , -ōnis, f. <i>departure</i>
<i>occurrō</i> , -ere, -curri, -cursū-	(<i>proficiscor</i> , 298).
<i>rus</i> , to go to meet, resist.	<i>prōpōnō</i> , -ere, -posui, -posi-
<i>ōrātiō</i> , -ōnis, f. <i>speech</i> . ¹	<i>tus</i> (<i>prō</i> + <i>pōnō</i> , 314), to
<i>orior</i> , -iri, <i>ortus</i> , to arise.	<i>set forth</i> , <i>tell</i> , <i>offer</i> .
<i>peditātus</i> , -ūs, m. <i>foot-soldiers</i> ,	<i>quō</i> , adv. <i>whither</i> , to which
<i>infantry</i> (<i>pedes</i> , 291).	<i>place</i> .
<i>polliceor</i> , -ēri, -itus, to prom-	<i>tandem</i> , adv. <i>at last</i> , <i>finally</i> .
<i>ise</i> .	<i>vēlōciter</i> , adv. <i>swiftly</i> .

- 346** 1. Ille lēgātus, quī peditātui praefuit, cōstitit nōn procul ā classe, et māgnā vōce apud imperitam et egen-tem multitudinem ōrātiōnem habuit. 2. Deinde quibusdam prōposuit quō hostēs prōgrederentur et quot convēnissent; hortābātur ut eōs cōsequerentur et ostendit victōriam suis prōfutūram esse. 3. Pollicētur sē eīs multum etiam argentum datūrum esse, quō fruantur quōque aedificia domōsque faciant. 4. Centuriōnem quendam multitudinī praefēcit, ac iussit eum hastis pilisque eōs armāre; postquam sōl ortus est, silentiō peditātum praemittit. 5. Arbitrābātur eōs, si vēlōciter prōgrederentur, exercitum cui Quīntus praecesset cōsequi posse. 6. Secundā hōrā hostēs, nullō certō ordine profecti, effēc-

¹ ōrātiōnem habēre, to make a speech.

runt ut similis fugae profectiō vidērētur. 7. Interim nōnnūlli convēnērunt et vacua ab militibus aedificia esse audivērunt; statim clāmōrem ingentem tollunt et prōgrediuntur. 8. Propter altitudinem fossae, peditātus cui centuriō praeerat neque sequi neque reverti poterat. 9. Quaesivit ab eis cūr aut dē suā salūte aut dē ipsius diligentia dēspērārent. Post hanc orātiōnem vëlōciter hostibus occurrērunt. 10. Tandem coniugibus hostium signisque potiti sunt et domum discessērunt nē iniquam condiōnem experirentur.

- 347** 1. The infantry, of which Labienus was in charge, halted not far from the ditch. 2. Caesar put Labienus in charge of the infantry, which then went to meet¹ the army. 3. He promises that he will lead them off home, if they show themselves brave men. 4. They were able neither to advance nor to retreat, and it was of no avail to them to have found out the enemy's plans. 5. He asked them why they had not set out and gone to meet the enemy. 6. In the meantime the sun rose; he delivered a speech in which he told them where his brother had gone. 7. That their departure might not have the appearance of flight, they advanced with a shout and showed their spears. 8. If Caesar had been in charge of those troops, they would not have despaired of their lives² and returned home.

LESSON XLIV

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

- 348** LEARN the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitives of *volō*, *to wish*, *nōlō*, *to be unwilling*, and *mālō*, *to prefer* (487).

¹ One word.

² *salūs*.

(a) *Nōlō* is compounded of *nē*, *not*, and *volō*; *mālō* of the stem of *magis*, *more*, and *volō*.

(b) Notice that the Present Indicative, and the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive are the only tenses in which any irregular forms appear. None of these verbs has a Future Infinitive.

(c) These verbs are all followed by the Complementary or Object Infinitive.

349

VOCABULARY

<i>adorior</i> , -iri, -ortus (ad + orior, 345), to rise up against, attack, assault.	<i>militāris</i> , -e, pertaining to war (miles, 142).
<i>alter</i> , <i>altera</i> , <i>alterum</i> , the other of two (469). (Compare <i>alius</i> , 331.)	<i>omnīnō</i> , adv. altogether, wholly.
<i>dēbeō</i> , -ēre, <i>dēbui</i> , <i>dēbitus</i> , to owe, ought.	<i>patior</i> , -ī, <i>passus</i> , to suffer, allow.
<i>ferē</i> , adv. almost. ¹	<i>prope</i> , adv. and prep. with accu. near.
<i>imprōvisō</i> , adv. suddenly, unexpectedly.	<i>quantus</i> , -a, -um, how great, as great as. ²
<i>intermittō</i> , -ere, -misi, -missus, to stop, interrupt, let pass.	<i>quisque</i> , <i>quaeque</i> , <i>quidque</i> , each one. ³
	<i>subsidiū</i> , -ī, n. reserve, aid.

- 350 1. *Centuriō, quī peditātui praeerat, subsidium ad Caesarem mittere volēbat, sed imperitus rei militāris*⁴ *erat.*
 2. *Alium ducem peditātui praeficere nōlēbat Caesar nē omnīnō timidīs hominibus*⁵ *spem salutis tolleret.* 3. *Cae-*

¹ Used chiefly with numerals and negative adjectives and adverbs; *paene*, 305, is of wider application and is found with verbs as well.

² Frequently used as a correlative with *tantus*, 252: *tantam multitudinem interfecerunt quantum diēi tempus est passum.* *They killed as great a number as the time allowed.*

³ Declined in full, 478.

⁴ *rēs militāris*, science of war.

⁵ Translate from.

sar cōpiās pedestris ā labōre revocāvit atque hostīs secūtus est quantum diēi tempus est passum, ut alterō diē māne eīs occurreret. 4. Māluit imperitum dūcem classī praeesse quam alium in tantā difficultāte praefici, quod hostīs improvīsō adorīrī voluit. 5. Arborēs magnā altitudīne prope classem erant; caelum nūbibus occultābātur ut nostrī ab hostibus neque audiri neque vidēri possent. 6. Cōfidēbat, sī pecūniam eīs pollicērētur, sē ab eīs impetrātūrum esse ut domōs finitimōrum incenderent et sē sequerentur. 7. Nūllum ferē diem intermittēbant quīn pedestri proeliō experīrentur quid in quōque animī esset; ac paene cotidiē decem milium passuum iter facere solēbant. 8. Nōn intellegō utrum cōnsilium probēs, neque quisquam est quī sē iūdicāre posse dicat. 9. Nisi fossā essēmus impeditī quīn hostibus vëlōciter occurrissēmus, numquam morātī essēmus. 10. Nōn modo bonam fortūnam spērāre dēbēs, sed etiam malam cum fortitudīne experīrī. Beātus ille, cui pauca satis sunt!

- 351** 1. On the second day Caesar wished to advance swiftly, in order that he might attack the enemy unexpectedly. 2. The soldiers allowed hardly a day to pass¹ without advancing many miles. 3. They preferred to do this rather than² to be defeated in battle line. 4. As long as the time of day allowed, they followed the enemy, for Caesar had promised them much money. 5. They were unwilling to leave the fleet before midnight, for fear they should be seen or heard. 6. He does not doubt that if he places another in charge of the infantry, the soldiers will despair of their lives. 7. Caesar wished to set out early the next day, in order to engage the enemy.

¹ Compare 350, 7.

² quam.

The Beginning of Civil War (52-48 B. C.)

Itaque Pompēius, postquam cōsul sine collēgā creātus est, lēgem tulit¹ nē cui absentī cōsulātum petere liceret, quā lēge plēbiscitum abrogāvit, quō paulō ante Caesarī permissum erat ut absēns alterum cōsulātum peteret; atque inimicī Caesaris senātui persuāsērunt ut ante tempus ex Galliā revocārētur. Tum Caesar suōs milītēs est hortātus ut imperātorem cuius ductū² tot annis plūrima proelia secunda fēcissent finisque imperi Rōmānī auxissent, ab inimicīs dēfenderent, et trāns Rubicōnem, quod flūmen est inter Galliam Cisalpinam³ et Italiā, contēdit. Cōsulēs senātusque omnis cum Pompēiō ex urbe et ex Italiā in Graeciam fūgērunt, ubi bellum contrā Caesarem parāvērunt. Is vacuā urbe aerāriōque potītus est et dictātorem sē fēcit. Inde Hispāniās⁴ petiit: ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs fortissimōsque cum dūcibus superāvit, sed milītēs omnis incolumis dīmisit. Deinde postquam Massiliam expūgnāvit, Rōmam rediit⁵ et cōsul creātus est cum Publiō Serviiliō. Mox in Graeciam profectus est ut contrā Pompēium dīmicāret. Primō proeliō victus est et fugātus; sed nōn est captus quod Pompēius noctū sequi nōluit, dixitque Caesar nec Pompēium scire vincere ac sē effectūrum esse ut postea numquam superārī posset.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

abrogō, -āre, <i>to abrogate,</i>	aerārium, -ī, <i>n. treasury.</i>
<i>abolish.</i>	Cisalpinus, -a, -um, <i>this side</i>
absēns, <i>absent.</i>	<i>the Alps.</i>

¹ Perf. indic. act. of *ferō, to carry*; with *lēgem, to have a law passed.*

² *Under whose leadership.*

³ Roughly that portion of northern Italy which is included in the modern Piedmont, Lombardy, and Emilia.

⁴ Spain was at this time divided into two provinces.

⁵ *Returned.*

collēga, -ae, m. <i>colleague.</i>	lēx, lēgis, f. <i>law.</i>
cōsulātus, -ūs, m. <i>consulship.</i>	nē quis, that not . . . any-one (478).
creō, -āre, to elect.	noctū, adv. <i>by night.</i>
dictātor, -ōris, m. <i>dictator.</i>	permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus
dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	(per + mittō), to allow, entrust.
(di + mittō), to send away.	
ductus, -ūs, m. <i>leadership (dux).</i>	plēbiscitum, -i, n. <i>vote of the people.</i>

LESSON XLV

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

353 LEARN the Imperatives of all the paradigms 479–486, and of **nōlō**, 487. The pres. imper. sing. of **dico**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō**¹ are **dic**, **dūc**, **fac**, and **fer**; their other imperative forms are regular.

354

EXAMPLES

- Haec laudā.** *Praise these things.*
- Nōli haec laudāre.** *Don't praise these things.*
- Cavē nē haec laudēs.** *Take care not to praise these things.*
- Fac (vidē) nē haec laudēs.** *See that you do not praise these things.*

(a) The first example illustrates the common way of expressing a Command or Request in the second person;² in the first and third persons, and sometimes in

¹ The full conjugation of this verb will be given later.

² The future imperative is rare, being only used in sentences stating an expected result or in formal language, laws, etc.

the second, the Hortatory or Jussive Subjunctive is used, 239.

(b) The second example illustrates the most common way of expressing a Prohibition in the second person; sometimes the imperatives *cavē*, *beware*, *fac* or *vidē*, *see to it*, followed by *nē* and the present subjunctive, are used as in 3 and 4.

(c) For prohibitions in the first and third persons, the Hortatory Subjunctive is used, 239.

355 *Rule.*—The Imperative states the action of the verb as a Command or Request.

W. 495; B. 281; AG. 269; H. 560.

356 *Rule.*—Prohibitions are regularly expressed by *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the Infinitive; sometimes by *cavē*, *fac* or *vidē*, with *nē* and the present subjunctive.

W. 496, 1.3; B. 276, c; AG. 269, a, 2.3; H. 561.

357

VOCABULARY

<i>caveō</i> , -ēre, <i>cāvī</i> , <i>cantus</i> , <i>to be on one's guard, take care not.</i>	<i>incertus</i> , -a, -um (in + <i>certus</i> , 192), <i>uncertain.</i>
<i>complūrēs</i> , -ia or -a (gen. -ium), <i>several.</i>	<i>instituō</i> , -ere, -uī, -ūtus, <i>to begin.</i>
<i>cōnficiō</i> , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (con + <i>faciō</i> , 272), <i>to complete, finish, weaken.</i>	<i>mercātor</i> , -ōris, m. <i>trader.</i>
<i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um, <i>tired out.</i>	<i>opus</i> , -eris, n. <i>work.</i>
<i>excitō</i> , -āre, <i>to arouse.</i>	<i>quamquam</i> , conj. <i>although, and yet.</i> ¹
<i>facultās</i> , -ātis, f. <i>opportunity.</i>	<i>quidem</i> , adv. <i>at least, in fact, etc.</i>
	<i>voluntās</i> , -ātis, f. <i>will, wish.</i>

358 1. *Habētis*, *militēs*, *facultātem* quam voluistis; *inīquō locō* et *imprōvisō* adorīminī *hostis*, *nōlīte cēdere*. 2. *Nōlīte ūnam quidem hōram opus intermittere*; *dūcem ipsum audīre haec et vidēre exīstimāte*; *subsidiū mit-*

¹ Used with the Indicative.

tite. 3. Vidēte nē locō cēdātis; multam vōbīs pecūniam prōpōnō et hanc mē vōbīs datūrum esse polliceor, si hostis cōsequāminī. 4. Opus cōficiāmus; tēla, hastās pilaque, expediāmus; insignis erit vōbīs glōria, si hostis premētis. 5. Cōstitērunt milītēs et ad opus discessērunt; quisque alterō diē cōgnōscere voluit quō hostēs sē recēpissent. 6. "Arborēs portāte ut castra mūniātis." Hāc ōrātiōne mōtī milītēs, quamquam dēfessī erant, sē ex quietē excitāverunt et opus instituērunt. 7. Aliae¹ gentēs equis māgnoperē dēlectantur, aliae eōs sacros habent; ad hanc gentem ab mercātōribus portantur. 8. Germāni complūrēs annōs ā Suēbīs premēbantur; hī nihil omnīnō contrā suam voluntātem facere solēbant. 9. Cavē nē existīmēs eōs domum reversūrōs esse; spērō et cōfidō eōs revertisse, sed incertum est. 10. Nōn imperitī rei militāris sunt; paene cotidiānis proeliis contendere malēbant quam pāce fruī.

- 359** 1. Halt, soldiers, and pitch camp; see that the enemy do not attack you unexpectedly. 2. Do not desist from the work; believe that Caesar sees all that you do. 3. The opportunity that you desired is here; be brave men; fight as long as the time of day will allow.² 4. It was uncertain which of the two plans Caesar approved; but the soldiers preferred to fight. 5. Although they were tired, they set to work as soon as the sun had risen. 6. They were nearly all aroused by this speech, nor was there anyone who did not wish to meet the enemy. 7. They never did anything which they did not wish to do;³ still they were skilled in military matters. 8. They asked the traders, of whom there were several present, what they brought.

¹ *aliae . . . aliae, some . . . others.*

² Compare 350, 3.

³ *voluntās*; compare 358, 8.

LESSON XLVI

THE VERBS EŌ AND FĪŌ

eŏ, ire, (ivī) iī, itūrus, to go.

360 LEARN the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitives, 488.

(a) The stem is -i-; this appears as -e- in the forms eŏ, eunt, euntŏ, and in the present subjunctive throughout.

fīŏ, fieri, factus, to be made, become.

361 Learn the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitives, 488.

(a) Notice that the i is long except in the form fit and when followed by -er.

(b) Fīŏ is the passive of faciŏ; but compounds of faciŏ which, like efficiŏ, change the a to i have regular passives, e. g., efficior, effici, effectus.

362

VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -ntis, m. and f. <i>young man or woman.</i>	noceŏ, -ēre, nocui, nocitūrus, <i>to harm.</i> ²
circumveniŏ, -ire, -vēni, -ven- tus (circum + veniŏ, 276), <i>to surround.</i>	noctū, adv. <i>by night (nox).</i> nōndum, adv. <i>not yet.</i>
coeipi, -isse, coeptus, to be- <i>gin.</i> ¹	opprimŏ, -ere, -pressi, -pres- sus (ob + premŏ, 291), to <i>overwhelm.</i>
ēdūcŏ, -ere, -xī, -ctus (ē + dūcŏ, 264), to lead forth.	permittŏ, -ere, -misi, -missus (per + mittŏ, 260), to yield, <i>surrender, permit.</i>
expeditus, -a, -um, <i>lightly</i> <i>burdened, unincumbered</i> (expediŏ, 283).	prōcēdŏ, -ere, -cessi, cessūrus (prō + cēdŏ, 338), to ad- <i>vance.</i>
latus, -eris, n. <i>side, flank.</i>	

¹ The present system is supplied by incipiŏ, -ere.

² Used with the dative.

363 1. Eōsdem quōs in fugā esse arbitrābantur, ad sē ire vidērunt; itaque ipsī fugere coepērunt. 2. Fiēbat ut clāmor post tergum tollerētur. Tum undique convēnērunt hostēs et nostrōs ab latere sinistrō adortī, circumvērunt. 3. Interim adulēscētem quendam prae misit, quī eōs māgnoperē hortārētur nē longius tālī tempore prōcēderent. 4. Sōl iam ortus erat, sed ei quī, ut hostīs opprimerent, trāns fossam ierant, nōndum reverterant. 5. Nōlite fugā salūtem petere; primum cōsistite, deinde contrā hostīs vëlōciter ite; sic spērō vōs servārī posse. 6. Etsī propter altitūdinem flūminis erat summa difficultās, tamen cōpiās pedestris noctū trādūcere coepit. 7. Caesar postquam quid ā quōque fierī velīt ostendit, legiōnēs expeditās ēdūcit; statim sē suaeque omnia potestātī eius permīsērunt hostēs. 8. Haec ad sē portārī ab mercātōribus Germānī nōn patiuntur, quod ea sibi nocēre existimant. 9. Ūnā nocte Germānī eōs vulneribus dolōreque cōfectōs adortī omnis oppressērunt. 10. Hīc est Gallōrum mōs, ut mercātōrēs, etiam invītōs, cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit, quaerant.

364 1. Caesar ordered them first to make camp, then to go against the enemy. 2. He showed what he wished to be done by each man, that they might not be surrounded and attacked on all sides. 3. Finish the work which you have begun; do not surrender yourselves and all your possessions to them. 4. The Germans thought that many things which the traders brought injured them. 5. Therefore some tribes did not allow the traders to go to them, but used what they themselves had. 6. The storming of the town was so difficult for the right flank that nearly everybody was killed. 7. They would have begun to march early, if there had not been the greatest difficulty on account of their baggage.

The Civil Wars (continued)

Deinde in Thessaliâ ad¹ Pharsalum ingentibus cōpiis diu dīmīcātum est. Postrēmō victus est Pompēius: ipse fugātus² Alexandrēam petiit ut ā rēge Aegypti acciperet auxilia. Sed hīc fortūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus³ occidit Pompēium et caput eius ad Caesarem mīsīt; quī, ubi caput tantī viri et generi quondam suū vīdit, etiam lacrimās fūdisse dicitur.

Mox Caesar Alexandrēam⁴ vēnit. Ipsum quoque Ptolemaeus conātus est interficere; itaque rēgi bellum illātum est,⁵ quī victus in Nīlō moritur. Caesar Alexandrēā potītus,³ rēgnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorōri. Deinde Pharnacem quī ad Pompēium in Graeciam auxilium mīserat, aciē vīcit; postea ad mortem eum cōēgit. Postquam Rōmam revertit, sē cōsulem cum Lepidō collēgā fēcīt. Deinde in Africam profectus,³ suos inimicōs post multa proelia superāvit. Ubi Catō, quī nōn longē ab urbe Uticā castra posuerat, certior est factus de victōriis eius, mortem sibi cōscīvit.

Post annum Caesar Rōmam revertit ubi quartō sē cōsulem fēcīt. Eī tamen quiēte fruī nōn licuit: statim in Hispāniās est profectus, quod ibi Pompēi filii, Gnaeus et Sextus, ingēns bellum parāverant. Multa proelia secūta sunt quōrum ultimum ad Mundam erat. In hōc proeliō Caesar paene victus est ut sē voluerit occidere nē post tantam rei militāris glōriam in potestātem inimicōrum

¹ *Near.*

² Perf. pass. partic. agreeing with *ipse*.

³ Observe that the perf. partic. of a deponent verb has an active meaning.

⁴ See 236, 10.

⁵ Perf. indic. pass. of *Inferō*, an irregular verb which is treated in Lesson LI; translate, *was brought on*.

venerit; dēnique suōs in aciem redūxit vicitque hostis.
Ex Pompēi filiis māior¹ occisus est, minor fūgit.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

cōnsciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītus,	gener, -erī, m. son-in-law.
to determine; with mor-	glōria, -ae, f. glory.
tem sibi, to commit suicide.	lacrima, -ae, f. tear.
fortūna, -ae, f. fortune.	postrēmō, adv. finally.
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, to	quartō, adv. for the fourth
pour out.	time.
	soror, -ōria, f. sister.

LESSON XLVII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

366

EXAMPLES

1. **Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit.**
After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.
2. **Ubi parātī sunt, oppida sua incendērunt.**
When they were prepared, they set their towns on fire.
3. **Cum primum potuit, ad exercitum contendit.**
As soon as he could, he hurried to the army.

(a) The pupil will remember that similar sentences have been used frequently in the preceding lessons. Such temporal clauses usually refer to a single past action and take the Perfect Indicative.

Rule.—*Postquam, after, ubi, ut, when, cum primum, ubi primum, simul atque (simul ac), as soon as, when* referring to a single past action, are used with the Perfect Indicative.

W. 530, 531; B. 287; AG. 324; H. 602.

¹ *māior* is often used to mean *the elder*; *minor*, *the younger*. Compare *māiorēs*, *ancestors*.

367 CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM ¹

EXAMPLES

1. **Oppidum nōn antequam tēla deerant expūgnātum est.**
The town was not taken until arms failed.
2. **Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt.**
They did not stop fleeing until they reached the river.
3. **Caesar priusquam haec faciat, castra oppūgnābit.**
Before Caesar does (shall do) this, he will storm the camp.
4. **Priusquam id effici posset, Rōmāni aderant.**
The Romans were there before that could be done.

(a) Notice that in the first two sentences the clauses introduced by *antequam* and *priusquam* express an actual fact and have the Indicative; but in sentences 3 and 4 the clauses express an act as anticipated and have the Subjunctive.

- 368 **Rule.**—*Antequam* and *priusquam* are used with the Indicative to express an actual fact; with the Subjunctive to express an act as anticipated.

W. 534; B. 291, 292; AG. 327; H. 605.

369 CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY DUM

EXAMPLES

1. **Dum haec geruntur, ad flūmen contendērunt.**
While this was being done, they hurried to the river.
2. **Dum erat facultās, abibant.**
So long as there was a chance, they went away.

¹ *Antequam* and *priusquam* are compounded of the adverbs *ante*, *prius*, and the conjunction *quam*; they are often separated: *ante . . . quam*, *prius . . . quam*, as in sentence 2.

3. **Caesar expectat dum nāvēs convenient.***Caesar is waiting until the ships (shall) assemble.*4. **Caesar nōn expectāvit dum Helvētīi pervenirent.***Caesar did not wait until the Helvetii should arrive.*

(a) Notice that in sentence 1 **dum**, *while*, is used with the Present Indicative expressing a continued action in past time. The Present is used, as the clause expresses something which was going on at the same time with the action of the principal verb; but we translate by the past.

(b) When, as in sentence 2, **dum** means *so long as*, any tense of the Indicative may be used.

(c) Notice that in sentences 3 and 4 **dum**, *until*, introduces clauses of expected action and that the Subjunctive is used.¹

370 *Rule.*—*Dum, while*, is used with the Present Indicative; *dum, so long as*, with any tense of the Indicative; but *dum, until*, introducing a clause of expected action, is used with the Subjunctive.

W. 523; B. 293; AG. 328; H. 608.

371

VOCABULARY

abeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (ab +	interclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus,
eō, 360), to go away.	to cut off.
compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, to	poscō, -ere, poposci (poscitū-
fill, cover.	rus), to demand.
concēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessūrus	prōvideō, -ēre, -vidi, -visus (prō
(cum + cēdō, 338), to yield.	+ videō, 229), to provide.
eruptiō, -ōnis, f. sally.	trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (trāns
extrā, prep. outside of.	+ eo, 360), to cross.

¹ Sometimes **dum**, *until*, introduces an actual event; it is then used with the Indicative: **expectāverunt dum pervēnit.** *They waited until he arrived (not for him to arrive).*

372 1. Cum primum facultās data est, cōpiās edūxit et montem militibus complere coepit. 2. Nōn prius eum abire patiuntur quam ab eō concessum sit, ut hostibus alterō diē occurrerent. 3. Nōn prius ille vacuus ā militibus relictus est locus quam ēruptiō est facta. 4. Dum adulescentēs longius prōcēdunt, hōstēs quī undique convēnērunt ēruptiōnem fēcērunt et eōs castris interclūsērunt. 5. Dum tempus noctis patiēbātur, quiēte per herbam fruēbantur. Ubi sōl ortus est, abibant, atque eō diē multa mīlia passuum prōcēdēbant. 6. Dixit eōs ipsōs quidem nōn debere dubitāre, quīn hostēs prōgredi extrā agmen audērent. 7. Exspectāvit dum omnēs undique convenirent; antequam abiret, quid in tantā difficultāte vellet, imperāvit. 8. In eiusmodi difficultātibus, quantum diligentia prōvidēri poterat, sapienter prōvidēbātur. Sīgnū profectiōnis datum est priusquam hostēs domum discēderent. 9. Priusquam ei certiorēs fierent, obsidēs poposcit, atque postquam hī traditi sunt, flūmen trānsiit. 10. Nihil erat quod sē virtūte nōn efficere posse putarent, nec prius sequi dēstitērunt quam mūrō portisque adpropinquāvērunt.

373 1. So long as the night allowed, they advanced; but they did not arrive before the sun rose. 2. As soon as they arrived, he began to lead forth his troops and to cross the river. 3. He brought all his legions together into one place, before the Gauls could be informed of his arrival. 4. The enemy waited until he should cover the hill with men, before they made an attack. 5. While the soldiers were pitching and fortifying the camp, the young men made a sally. 6. There was no provision¹ that was not made, and they thought that with courage they could do everything. 7. Do not stop advancing until you arrive near the wall and the gates of the city. 8. After

¹ Compare 372, 8.

the hostages had been handed over, Caesar departed and the tired soldiers dispersed to their homes.

LESSON XLVIII

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY CUM

CUM TEMPORAL

374

EXAMPLES

1. **Tēcum videor esse, cum tuās litterās legō.**
I seem to be with you when I read your letter.
2. **Tum erās cōsul cum meam domum incendēbant.**
You were consul at the time when they set my house on fire.
3. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haedui.**
At the time Caesar entered Gaul, the Haedui were the leaders.

(a) Notice that these clauses introduced by **cum**, like those in **366**, fix or determine the time which is meant, and have the Indicative. Often the independent part of the sentence contains **tum**, **eō tempore**, *then*, *at that time*, or a similar expression. Compare these clauses with defining Relative Clauses **281, b**, remembering that **cum** is itself a relative.

CUM CIRCUMSTANTIAL

375

EXAMPLES

1. **Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, sē in montem recēpērunt.**
Being unable to (when they could not) withstand the charges of our soldiers any longer, they withdrew to the mountain.

2. **Caesari cum id nūtiātum esset, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit.**

When this had been reported to Caesar, he hurried into further Gaul.

3. **His cum persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs misērunt.**

Being unable to (since they could not) persuade these, they sent envoys.

4. **Cum diū pūgnātum sit, hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.**

While (although) the battle lasted a long time, no one could see an enemy.

(a) Notice that all these clauses introduced by **cum** express not the time so much as the situation or the circumstances, under which the action denoted by the principal verb took place, and have the Subjunctive. If the Indicative had been used in 1 and 2, **cum . . . nōn poterant**; **cum . . . nūtiātum erat**, to give the full meaning we should have had to translate: *It was when they could not*; *It was when report had been made*, etc.

(b) In English we use either a participial clause, as in the translation of 1 and 3, or a relative *when, as*, etc., to express the same relation. Such clauses in English may express simply the circumstances or they may be causal or concessive: e. g., "Being in town, I saw him," may tell nothing but the circumstances under which I saw him; but it may also mean, "Because I was in town, I saw him"; or even "Although I was in town, I saw him." Exactly so in Latin, circumstantial clauses with **cum** and the Subjunctive may express Cause as in 3, or Concession as in 4.

- 376 **Rule.**—*Cum* is used with the Indicative to determine the particular time of an action; with the Subjunctive to state the situation or circumstances of an action; such clauses may also express Cause or Concession.

W. 535, 536, 542, 571; B. 288, 289, 309. 3; AG. 325, 326; H. 598, 600, 601.

377

VOCABULARY

dēficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (dē + faciō, 272), <i>to fail, be wanting.</i>	nāscor, nāsci, nātus, <i>to be born, arise.</i>
instruō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctus, <i>to arrange, draw up.</i>	nocturnus, -a, -um, <i>of the night, by night (nox, 177).</i>
legō, -ere, lēgi, lectus, <i>to read.</i>	perficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (per + faciō, 272), <i>to fin- ish.</i>
littera, -ae, f. <i>letter (of the alphabet), plur. letter (epistle).</i>	prōducō, -ere, -xi, -ctus (prō + dūcō, 264), <i>to lead forth.</i>
mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. <i>fortification (mūniō, 291).</i>	propinquus, -a, -um, <i>neigh- boring; as a substantive, relative.</i>

- 378 1. Caesar, cum suōs iniquō locō pūgnātūrōs esse exis-
timāret, eōs ē castris ēducere et ab ¹ dextrō latere hostium
cōstituere coepit. 2. Dum illi dē condiciōnibus inter sē
agunt,² litterās ad lēgātum mīsit nē animō dēficeret.
3. Cum vir insigni locō nātus mortuus est, propinquī con-
veniunt ut de morte eius quaerant. 4. Nōlīte vōs potes-
tātī eōrum permittere; omnia prius experiantur quam
illud cōsiliū probētis. 5. Cum ipse centuriō vulneri-
bus aetāteque cōfectus esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi
tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat. 6. Eō tempore cum
ēruptiō facta est, labōre vulneribusque cōfēcti hostis cir-
cumveniēbātis et ā castris interclūdēbātis. 7. Cum mili-
tēs summō studiō sīgnū poscerent, cōpiās prōdūci
aciemque instruī iussit. 8. Antequam suis persuadere
posset ut extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcēderent, hostēs fossam
trānsierant. 9. Labōre operis quod nōndum perfectum
est defessī, simulque adventū hostium perterriti, neque
ēruptiōnem facere neque aciem instruere audēbant.

¹ Giving the direction; translate *on*.

² Often, as here, to *discuss, treat*.

10. Ubi litterās Caesaris lēgit, cōpiās expeditās ēdūcī et incertīs itineribus noctū ad eum ire iussit.

- 379** 1. When he arrived at the camp, he learned that the neighboring tribes were in arms. 2. Since not only courage but also weapons now failed our men,¹ the centurion ordered them to withdraw. 3. Although they were tired out by the long march, they did not stop² working day or night. 4. The enemy filled up the ditch before Caesar's soldiers knew what was being done. 5. At the very time when that sally took place, we were crossing the river. 6. Inasmuch as the fortifications had not yet been finished, he sent a letter to Caesar for aid.³ 7. While this was happening in Gaul, Caesar was arming the young men. 8. As soon as he had read the letter, he went to the other camp, of which his brother was in charge. 9. Being unable to persuade the soldiers to fight, he ordered them to withdraw within⁴ the fortifications.

380

READING EXERCISE

The Assassination of Caesar 44 B. C.

Iam omnia bella cīvilīa tōtō orbe⁶ terrārū compo-
suerat ut Rōmam revertī posset. Cum plūrimī māximī-
que honōrēs ā senātū dēcrētī essent, inter quōs ut⁶ pater
patriae appellārētur ac dictātor perpetuus esset, cīvēs eī⁷
irātī esse coepērunt quod honōrēs, quī ā populō antea
dēcernēbantur, dabat eīs quibus voluit, et senātui,⁸ quī eī
tantōs honōrēs dederat, nōn adsurgēbat aliaque paene
rēgia insolentius faciēbat; sed cum populus eum rēgem
appellāvisset, respondit *Caesarem sē, nōn rēgem esse*, et
cum ā cōsule Antōniō diadēma saepius capitī⁸ admōtum

¹ Dative.

² intermittō. Compare 358, 2.

³ Use a purpose clause.

⁴ In with the accu.

⁵ Abl. of place.

⁶ ut . . . appellārētur, etc., a substantive clause depending on dēcrētī essent.

⁷ Dative.

⁸ Dat. depending on a compound verb, 344.

esset, reppulit atque in templum Iovis misit. Contrā eum multī senātōrēs equitēsque coniūrāvērunt. Prīncipēs inter coniūrātōs fuērunt duo Brūtī, Marcus et Decius, ex eō genere Brūtī, quī primus cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, Cāius Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ab hīs Caesar cum inter cēterōs¹ vēnisset in cūriam, multis vulneribus occisus est; deinde Capitōlium occupātum est. Cum obliviō caedis eius ā senātū dēcrēta esset atque obsidēs acceptī essent, coniūrātī ā Capitōliō dēscendērunt. Testāmentō Caesaris inter hērēdēs institūtus et in nōmēn adoptātus est Cāius Octavius, sorōris nepōs; populō Rōmānō hortī trāns Tiberim datī sunt. Corpus Caesaris, cum in campum Martium portārētur, ā plebe ante rōstra² cremātum est.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

admoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus,	duo, <i>two</i> . ³
<i>to bring near.</i>	hērēs, -ēdis, m. <i>heir</i> .
adoptō, -āre, <i>to adopt</i> .	insolenter, adv. <i>haughtily</i> .
adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -sur-	irātus, -a, -um, <i>angry</i> .
rēctus, <i>to rise before</i> .	nepōs, -ōtis, m. <i>grandson</i> .
Capitōlium, -ī, n. <i>the capitol</i> .	obliviō, -ōnis, f. <i>pardon</i> .
cīvilis, -e, <i>civil</i> .	orbis, -is, m. <i>circle</i> ; orbis
compōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus,	terrārum, <i>the world</i> .
<i>to settle, finish</i> .	perpetuus, -a, -um, <i>perpetual</i> ,
coniūrātus, -ī, m. <i>conspira-</i>	<i>permanent</i> .
<i>tor</i> .	repellō, -ere, reppuli, -pulsus,
cūria, -ae, f. <i>senate-house</i> .	<i>to put away, refuse</i> .
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus,	rōstra, -ōrum, n. <i>rostra, plat-</i>
<i>to vote, decree</i> .	<i>form (for speakers)</i> .
diadēma, -atis, n. <i>crown</i> .	soror, -ōris, f. <i>sister</i> .
dictātōr, -ōris, m. <i>dictator</i> .	testāmentum, -ī, n. <i>will</i> .

¹ Supply senātōrēs.² So called because it was adorned with the rams (rōstra) of captured ships. A temple was afterward built at the spot where Caesar's body was burned.³ The declension will be given later.

LESSON XLIX
CAUSE AND CONCESSION

CAUSE

- 381 ONE of the most common ways of expressing cause is by **cum** and the Subjunctive, 376; other particles are **quod**, which has already been used, 264, **quia**, and **quoniam**, *because*, *since*.

382

EXAMPLES

1. **Quod mōns aberat mille passūs, eō sē recēpērunt.**
Because the mountain was a mile away, they withdrew to it.
2. **Quia haec fieri nōn posse intellegēbant.**
Because they understood that this could not be done.
3. **Quoniam mē vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vōs quidem dēfendam.**
Since I cannot save myself and you, I will defend you at least.
4. **Aristidēs expulsus est patriā quod iūstus esset.**
Aristides was driven from his native land, because (as people said) he was just.

(a) Notice that in sentences 1–3 the causal clauses with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam** and the Indicative state the reasons as those of the writer or speaker, while in 4, where the reason of some one else is reported, the Subjunctive is used. Such a Subjunctive is really in Indirect Discourse, as the implied quotation shows.¹

¹ Naturally when a verb of saying or thinking is expressed, all causal clauses, being subordinate, must have the Subjunctive.

- 383** *Rule.*—*Quod, quia, quoniam, because, since,* are used with the Indicative to give the reason of the speaker or writer; with the Subjunctive to give the reason of some one else.

W. 544–546, B. 286; AG. 321; H. 588.

CONCESSION

- 384** Two of the common ways of expressing concession are by *cum* with the Subjunctive, 376, and by *etsi, even if*, usually with the Indicative, 314. Another common way is by *quamquam* with the Indicative, 357.

W. 570; B. 309, 2; AG. 313, e; H. 586.

385 VOCABULARY

accēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus incolō, -ere, -ui, —, to dwell,
(ad + *cēdō*, 338), *to approach. inhabit.*

autem, conj. but, however, ineō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (in +
moreover. eō, 360), *to enter, enter*
upon.

cāsus, -ūs, m. chance, occurrence. lacessō, -ere, -sivi, -situs, to
provoke, challenge, har-
rass.

cōsulō, -ere, -ui, -tus, to have postridiē, adv. (posterus +
*regard for, care for, consult.*¹ *diēs*), *on the next day.*

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, to go pridīē, adv. (prior + diēs),
forth. on the preceding day.

eō, adv. thither, to that place reperiō, -īre, repperi, reper-
(is). *tus, to find.*

frustrā, adv. to no purpose.

- 386** 1. Ea quae antea postulavistis, fieri licet, quoniam propius accessistis munitionesque nostras circumvenistis.

¹ hunc cōsulere, *to ask this man's advice*; huic cōsulere, *to look out for this man's interest.*

2. Cum viri complūribus pūgnis dēfessi essent atque tēla eōs dēficerent, nē noctū quidem hostis lacessere dēstitērunt. 3. Quia locum magis idōneum reperire nōn poterat, postridiē montem militibus expeditis complēre hostisque interclūdere instituit. 4. Cum pridīē frūstrā hostis lacessivisset, novam bellī ratiōnem iniit ut ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia parāret. 5. Ii quī ea loca incolēbant ē finibus suis ēgressi sunt, quod frūmentum deesset; itaque Caesar eō contendit. 6. Petivērunt, quoniam nullā ratiōne amicis cōsulare possent, ut sibi ēius voluntāte ē civitāte ēgredi licēret. 7. Quī nāvibus praeerat, adulēscēns erat et rei militāris imperitus; quod postridiē ventum secundum nactus est, prōgrediēbatur. 8. Cum hostēs aut ex ripā aut paulum in aquam prōgressi pūgnārent, nostrōs celeriter oppressērunt. 9. Caesar autem, cum lēgātī cōnsilium probāret et ipse idem sentīret, nullā ratiōne id facere poterat. 10. Imperātor, quod nullum ēiusmodi cāsū expectābat, suōs etsi omnibus malis dēfessi erant, aequum in locum prōdūxit et aciem instrūxit.

- 387** 1. Inasmuch as we can not look out for our friends' interests, we beg to be allowed to leave the city. 2. Although the soldiers were tired with their work, they did not stop provoking the enemy. 3. Caesar determined to enter upon a new method of fighting, because on the previous day he had challenged the enemy to no purpose. 4. They begged Caesar to care for their friends because, as they said,¹ they could not care for them themselves. 5. Caesar determined to go to England; when he arrived there, he proceeded² to make provision against all chances. 6. Those who dwelt in England at the time when Caesar arrived there were barbarians. 7. The Britons could not conquer the Romans because they were not so experienced in warfare.

¹ Compare 382, 4.

² Use *īstituō*.

LESSON L

PARTICIPLES

388 LEARN the Present Active and the Perfect Passive Participles of the Model Verbs, 479-489.

389 Participles are adjectives in form and agreement; for the declension of the Present Active see 468; the Perfect Passive is declined like *bonus*, 467. In force they are verbs, having the same constructions as the verbs to which they belong.

390

EXAMPLES

1. *Fortissimē pugnāns interfectus est.*
He was killed while fighting most bravely.
2. *Gallia est omnis divisa.*
Gaul is divided as a whole.
3. *Ducem vulnerātum servāvit.*
He saved the wounded leader (or the leader who was wounded).
4. *Auctōritāte rēgis permōti, cōstituērunt exire.*
Moved by the influence of the king, they decided to go out.
5. *Civitās ob eam rem incitāta, ē finibus exire conābātur.*
When the state was aroused (the state having been aroused) on account of this, it attempted to leave its territory.

(a) Notice in sentence 1 that the present participle represents the action as going on at the time indicated by the verb.

(b) The perfect participle with *sum* may become

nothing more than a predicate adjective, as in 2; but its most common use is to express an action as finished before the time of the main verb, as in 3, 4, and 5.

(c) Notice also that the participles in 4 and 5 may express time, cause, concession, etc., according to the context in which the sentences are found. Therefore, we may best translate by *when*, *because*, *although*, etc., or by a verb coordinate with the main verb, e. g., "They were moved by the influence of the king and decided," etc.

391

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. **Caesare dūce oppidum expūgnāvērunt.**

Under the leadership of Caesar they stormed the town.

2. **Caelō serēnō sōl ortus est.**

The sun rose in a clear sky.

3. **Gnaeō Pompēiō, Marcō Crassō cōsulibus Germāni Rhēnum trānsiērunt.**

In the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus (or When Pompey and Crassus were consuls) the Germans crossed the Rhine.

4. **Germāni clāmōre auditō fūgērunt.**

The Germans fled on hearing the shout.

(a) Notice that in these sentences two nouns, a noun and an adjective, or a noun and a participle are used in the Ablative to express some circumstance attendant on the action of the main verb; this Ablative may also express time, as it clearly does in 3, or cause, as in 4. These same ideas might all be expressed by *cum*-clauses.

(b) Notice further that this ablative has no grammatical relation to the rest of the sentence; it is therefore called the *Ablative Absolute*.¹

¹ While we sometimes employ in English such phrases as "Caesar being leader," "The shout having been heard," these expressions are

- 392** *Rule.*—A noun or pronoun with another noun, an adjective or participle may be used in the Ablative to express the circumstances, time, or cause of an action.

W. 397-399; B. 227; AG. 255; H. 489.

393

VOCABULARY

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers. v.
(ad + dūcō, 264), to induce.	it is proper, one ought.
beneficium, -i, n. (bene + faciō), kindness, service.	permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus
Cassivelaunus, -i, m. Cassivelaunus.	(per + movēō, 245), to move deeply, to induce.
commūnis, -e, adj. common.	pertinēō, -ēre, -uī —, (per + teneō, 227), to pertain to, to reach.
dividō, -ere, -visī, -visus, to divide.	queror, -ī, questus, to complain.
exeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (ex + eō, 360), to go forth.	trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus
iugum, -i, n. yoke, ridge (of mountains).	(trāns + eō, 360), to cross.
maritimus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to the sea, sea (mare, 162).	ūsus, -ūs, m. use, need (ūtor, 298).
	uterque, -traque, -trumque, each (of two).¹

- 394** 1. Britannī, nostrō adventū permōtī, suae salūtī cōnsulere et ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia prōvidēre instituērunt. 2. Omnibus rēbus parātis, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, Caesar postrīdiē in Britanniam trānsiit. 3. Imperiō bellī Cassivelaunō permissō, Britannī cum commūnī cōnsiliō noctū convēnissent, postrīdie nostrōs proeliō lacessere

often awkward, and such phrases as those used in the translations given are generally to be preferred. Compare with the Latin construction the English Nominative Absolute. It should be remembered that the English has a Perfect Active Participle, "having made," etc., but that the Latin has none, save in Deponent Verbs.

¹ Declined like **uter**, 272, 469.

coep̄erunt. 4. Nostri, ab utrōque latere hostis adorti,¹ eōs gladiōs ēdūcere cōnantis atque vix sē dēfendentis oppres-
sērunt. 5. Cassivelaunō dūce Britannī ā Caesare superātī
sunt; finēs illius ā maritimīs cīvitatibus māgnō flūmine
divīsī sunt. 6. Inopiā omnium rērum adductī, quod frū-
mentum in agris esse repperērunt nūllum, ē finibus noctū
clam exire instituērunt. 7. Quoniam ad hunc locum per-
ventum est, dē Britanniae mōribus, quid sentiam quidque
cognōverim prōpōnere oportet. 8. Tandem Britannī ab
dextrō latere summum iugum nactī, hostis locō expellunt;
fugientis ad flūmen sequuntur complūrisque interficiunt.
9. Conciliō dimissō, Haeduis dē iniuriis querentibus pe-
tentibusque ut sē beneficiō² dignōs habēret, libertātem
concessit. 10. Interim dīmissis circum omnia oppida lit-
teris iisque ab oppidānis lectis, barbari dē suis fortūnis
dēspērāvērunt.

- 395** 1. Induced by the hope of plunder, they left the ships
and marched out by night. 2. Having found the enemy
on the top of the ridge, they drove them away and killed
nearly all as they fled. 3. This done, they set forth and
reached the ships before the sun rose. 4. Caesar crossed
into Britain when Pompey and Crasso were consuls;
when he arrived Cassivelaunus was the chief man there.
5. He left several cohorts on the shore³ and proceeded
into the interior of the country.⁴ 6. When the prisoners
begged that he would not kill them, he granted them
their liberty. 7. Caesar did not pursue the fleeing enemy
farther, because he wished to finish the fortifications
before night.

¹ Remember that the perf. partic. of a deponent verb has an active meaning.

² Abl. with *dignōs*, *worthy of*.

³ Translate, *near the sea*.

⁴ Translate, *into the interior parts*.

READING EXERCISE

The Destruction of the Conspirators

396 Populus Rōmānus Pompēiō et Caesare interfectis redisse¹ in libertātem vidēbātur; et redisset,² nisi Caesar hērēdem scripsisset Gaium Octāviūm, quī postea Augustus Caesar est appellātus, eumque filium adoptāvisset. Haec prīma cīviliū bellōrum causa erat cum³ Antōnius, irātus quod praelātus⁴ sibi esset iuvenis Octāvius, eum opprimere vellet. Sed Antōnius ā senātū hostis iūdicātus est et Caesar Octāviānus⁵ iūssus est cum cōsulibus dēsīgnātis Hirtiō et Pānsā bellum contrā eum gerere. Hī dūcēs profecti eum ad⁶ Mutīnam vicērunt. Evēnit tamen ut victōrēs cōsulēs ambō occisi sint; unde factum est ut trēs exercitūs unī iuveni Octāviānō pārerent. Fugātus Antōnius āmissō exercitū ad Lepidum pervēnit quī tum prōvinciās Galliae cum plūrimis cōpiis habēbat. Mox Lepidō adiuvante Caesar cum Antōniō pacem fēcit et Rōmam⁷ cum exercitū reversus effēcit ut sibi annum vicēsimum agentī⁸ cōsulātus darētur. Cum sociis Antōniō et Lepidō rem publicam armis tenēre coepit. Per hōs etiam Cicerō ōrātor occisus est multique aliī nōbilēs.

Intereā Brūtus et Cassius ingēns bellum mōvērunt. Contrā eōs igitur profecti Octāviānus et Antōnius (relictus enim erat Lepidus ut Itāliam dēfenderet) ad⁶ Philippōs, Macedoniae urbem, pūgnāvērunt. Cum primō proeliō victi essent Antōnius et Caesar, tamen interfectus est

¹ A shorter form for *redisse*.

² What kind of condition?

³ The clause *cum . . . vellet* is in predicate apposition to *haec prīma causa*.

⁴ *praelātus esset*, plup. subj. pass. of *praeferō*, to prefer.

⁵ The form of name which Octavius assumed after his adoption.

⁶ With names of towns, *near*.

⁷ Compare 236, 10.

⁸ *annum agere*, to spend a year; translate here, *in his*, etc.

Cassius; secundō Brūtum et plūrimōs nōbilis quī cum illis bellum gesserant, victōs interfēcērunt. Āc sic inter dūcēs divisa est rēs pūblica ut Caesar Hispāniās, Galliās, Italiāque tenēret, Antōnius Asiā et Orientem, Lepidus Africā acciperet.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

adoptō, -āre, to adopt.	irātus, -a, -um, angry.
civilis, -e, civil (civis).	nōbilis, -e, well known, noble.
cōsulātus, -ūs, m. consul- ship (cōsul).	Oriēns, -ntis, m. the Orient, East.
dēsignātus, -a, -um, elect.	pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, —, to obey.
ēveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventūrus (ē + veniō), to turn out; often impersonal with a substantive clause as its subject.	redeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (re + eō), to return.
hērēs, -ēdis, m. heir.	trēs, tria, three (473).
	unde, adv. wherefore.
	vicēsīmus, -a, -um, twentieth (vigintī).

LESSON LI

THE VERB FERŌ, to bear, bring

397 LEARN the conjugation of ferō entire with the exception of the gerund, gerundive, and supine, 489.

398 VOCABULARY

abdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (ab + dō), to put away, to hide.	adversus, -a, -um, opposite, unfavorable.
accidō, -ere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, to fall, happen.	cōnstō, -āre, -stiti, -statū- rus, to agree, correspond (impers. it is an estab- lished fact, it is well known).
adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (ad + ferō), to bring up.	

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suē-
tus, *to get accustomed to.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f. custom.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent.*

inferō, -ferre, -tuli, illātus
(in + ferō), *to carry, bring
upon.*

integer, -gra, -grum, *whole,
fresh.*

pār, paris, *equal, like.*

paulātim, *adv. gradually.*

referō, -ferre, rettuli, -lātus
(re + ferō), *to carry
back (pedem referre, to
retreat).*

succēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus
(sub + cēdō), *to come up,
to relieve.*

- 399 1. Hōc cāsū adductus, omnīs quī per aetātem arma
ferre possint ēgredi iubet; mulierēs sē in silvās abdidē-
runt. 2. Levī proeliō factō, ad oppidum in quō hiemāre
cōnsuēvit, contendit, quod maritimum erat. 3. Litteris
mediā nocte adlātis, intellēxit māgnūm perīculum acci-
disse, quō nostrī interclūsī fugientēsque interfectī essent.
4. Prope oppidum collis erat; ab flūmine parī māgnitū-
dine alter collis nāscēbātur adversus huic; eō Caesar
exercitum addūxit. 5. Integrī dēfessīs¹ successērunt;
sed, cum nūllum frūstrā pīlum accideret, omnēs tandem
sub montem pedem rettulērunt. 6. Crēberrimis Caesaris
beneficiis adductus lēgātis respondit nōn oportēre eōs dē
suā voluntāte dubitāre. 7. Ad haec ūnum modo respon-
dit: nōn esse suam cōnsuētūdinem dē paribus condiciōni-
bus loquī. 8. Crēbris nocturnis ēruptiōnibus aut ignem
mūrō inferēbant aut militēs incertis temporibus lacessē-
bant; haec quidem ratiō bellī eis māximē prōderat.
9. Hostēs, quia pridīe Caesar neque cōpiās prōdūxisset
neque flūmen trānsisset, paulātim pedem rettulērunt.
10. Ea silva ingentī māgnitudine per mediōs finis hos-
tium ad flūmen pertinet; multa ibi animālīa nāscī cōstat.

- 400 1. Being asked why they had retreated, they replied
that they could not endure the onrush of our soldiers.
2. As it was agreed that they must pass the winter in

Gaul, no grain had been provided in Britain. 3. When they complained of their wrongs, Caesar replied that he brought no hope or terms of peace. 4. This state had often brought war upon the Gauls; with equal valor it had often defended itself. 5. Fresh troops came up, and the enemy were gradually dislodged from their position and retreated. 6. Several ships, sailing out¹ of the harbor, were drawn up opposite us, but it was not agreed what our ships ought to do. 7. As the Gauls were in a higher position, their javelins fell with great force. 8. They said that the Germans had gradually grown accustomed to crossing the Rhine.

LESSON LII

PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

401 REVIEW the Pronouns learned thus far, 123, 129, 135, 136, 298, 317, 318, 320.

402 Learn the declension of the Indefinite pronouns *aliquis*, *some one*, *quisquis*, *whoever*, *quicumque*, *who-soever*, 478.

403 The following nine adjectives have *-ius* throughout in the Genitive Singular, with the exception of *alter* which has *alterius* throughout:

<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>one, single</i>
<i>sōlus</i>	<i>sōla</i>	<i>sōlum</i>	<i>alone</i>
<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>whole</i>
<i>ūllus</i>	<i>ūlla</i>	<i>ūllum</i>	<i>any</i>

¹ Notice the real time here expressed.

nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	<i>not any</i>
alius	alia	aliud	<i>another</i>
alter	altera	alterum	<i>the other (of two)</i>
uter	utra	utrum	<i>which (of two)</i>
neuter	neutra	neutrum	<i>neither</i>

(a) These have no Vocative. The form *alterius* is regularly employed as the genitive of *alius* to prevent confusion with the nominative. Five of these have been already used. The declension is given, 469.

404

VOCABULARY

animadvertō, -ere, -ti, -sus	redeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (re +
(animum + advertō), to	eō), to return.
<i>notice.</i>	<i>unde, adv. whence? the place</i>
quārē, adv. whereby? how?	from which (both inter-
<i>wherefore (both interrog-</i>	<i>rogative and relative).</i>
<i>ative and relative).</i>	valeō, -ēre, -ui, —, to be
	<i>strong.</i>

405

1. Neque ūllum fere tōtius hiemis tempus erat, quā aliquis nūntius dē adversō proeliō adferrētur. 2. Quamquam crēbris nūntiis commūnique periculō permōti sunt, sic parāti erant, ut, quicumque accidisset cāsus, hunc aequō animō ferrent. 3. Quidquid illi possunt, nāvibus valent; maritimās enim partēs incolunt, neque est ūllus¹ apud eōs rei militāris ūsus. 4. Alterō diē hostēs iugō relictō proelium iniērunt; proeliō adversō factō, nostrī pedem rettulērunt et unde vēnerant rediērunt. 5. Quia neutrum eōrum flūminum trānsire poterant nostrī ad montem, quō prōvincia ā maritimīs civitātibus dīvisa est, paulātīm rediērunt. 6. Nōn oportēre putābat commūnem salutem Haeduīs sōlis committere; quārē militēs paulātim sē recipere iūssit. 7. Paribus beneficiis ūsus,² contrā

¹ When a sentence is connected with the preceding, *neque . . . ūllus* rather than *et nūllus* is used as here. Compare sentence 1.

² From *ūtōr*.

voluntātem eōrum facere nōn dēbēre intellēxit; itaque neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvābat. 8. Graviter querentibus quod ē finibus ēgredi coācti essent, respondit sē amicōrum fortūnis cōsulere cōsuēscere. 9. Haec ubi Caesar animadvertit, cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in iugō cōstituit. 10. Cum nōn modo tēla sed etiam cōsilia utrīque dēficerent, uterque rūsus exercitum in castra redūxit.

- 406** 1. The Gauls are accustomed to defend themselves against whatsoever people brings war against them. 2. The soldiers answered, "Whoever they are, let us attack them before they return to the place from which¹ they came." 3. Whatsoever wars you wish to be carried on, we will carry on without any danger on your part.² 4. Between the two armies was a forest which offered some hope of safety. 5. Each commander ordered his soldiers to withdraw gradually from their position and retreat to this forest. 6. Neither noticed that in the other army fresh troops were relieving the exhausted. 7. Caesar was strongest in infantry,³ but the commander of the enemy trusted to his cavalry alone.

READING EXERCISE

- 407** *The Battle of Actium (31 B. C.) and the End of the Civil Wars*

Sublātis coniūrātis quī Caesarem occiderant, supererat Sextus Pompēius quī post clādem ad Mundam fugā ēvāserat. Hic contractis eīs quī supererant ex partibus⁴ Brūtī Cassique, ingēns bellum in Siciliā commōvit, sed ab Agrippā ita victus est ut in Asiam effugere coactus sit; ubi paulō post occisus est.

¹ Compare 405, 4.

² Compare 405, 3.

³ Objective gen.

⁴ *The party.*

Cum iam omnem occāsiōnem bellī cīvilis sublātam esse vidērētur, pāx imprōvisō ab Antōniō rupta est; nam hīc captus amōre Cleopātrae, rēgīnae Aegyptī, sorōrem Octāviānī repudiāvit, et incitātus ā rēgīna quae muliebri cupiditāte etiam in urbe rēgnāre volēbat, bellum contrā Octāviānum parāvit. Quī, primō nūntiō hūius periculī adlātō, Brundisiō¹ in Graeciam trāsiit ut imminentī bellō² occurreret, positisque castris in Epīrō ad Actiacī³ Apollinis templum, classe sinum Ambracium quem nāvēs Antōnī tenēbant obsēdit. Octāviānō quadringentae amplius⁴ nāvēs, ducentae hostibus fuērunt; sed hārum māgnitūdō numerum illārum superāvit: haec ipsa rēs hostibus exitiō⁵ fuit cum nāvēs tam māgnae essent ut nōn celeriter movi possent, et classis clārā nāvālī pūgnā victa est. Prima dux fugae erat rēgīna; eam secūtus est Antōnius quī fugientis mulieris quam pūgnantis exercitūs suī comes esse māluit. Proximō annō Caesar rēgīnam Antōniumque Alexandrēam persecūtus, ultimam bellis cīvilibus imposuit manum. Antōnius obsessus ā Caesare, dēspērātis rēbus, praesertim fāmā occīsam esse⁶ Cleopātram permōtus, sē ipse interfēcit; rēgīna cum frūstrā ā Caesare petīssset ut sibi rēgnū redderētur, et sē triumphō⁷ servārī vidisset, sibi serpentem admīsīt, cūius venēnō occīsa est.

¹ "Abl. of place from which"; this is essentially the same as the Abl. of Separation, 206. Notice, however, that the name of a town has no preposition.

² 344.

³ The promontory of Actium was on the south side of the entrance to the Ambracian bay.

⁴ The comparative is used here without any influence on the case of nāvēs.

⁵ Study 415-418.

⁶ Indirect discourse after fāmā.

⁷ Dative depending on servārī, *saved for*.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

Actiacus , -a, -um, of <i>Actium</i> .	muliebris , -e, womanish, a woman's.
admittō , -ere, -misi, -missus, to let come, give access to.	obsideō , -ēre, -sēdi, -sessus, to blockade.
amplius , adv. comp. more (than).	occāsiō , -ōnis, f. opportunity.
commoveō , -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, to arouse.	persequor , -ī, -secūtus, to overtake.
contrahō , -ere, -frāxi, -tractus, to draw together, collect.	quadringenti , -ae, -a, four hundred.
cupiditās , -ātis, f. desire, passion.	repudiō , -āre, to cast aside, divorce.
ducenti , -ae, -a, two hundred.	rumpō , -ere, rūpi, ruptus, to break.
evādō , -ere, -vāsi, -vāsūrus, to go out, escape.	serpens , -ntis, f. snake.
exitium , -ī, n. ruin.	sinus , -ūs, m. bay.
imminēns , threatening.	supersum , -esse, -fui, to survive, remain.
impōnō , -ere, -posui, -positus, to put on.	triumphus , -ī, m. triumph.
	venēnum , -ī, n. poison.

LESSON LIII

REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

THE GENITIVE

408 Thus far the Genitive has been used chiefly to indicate the Possessor, 35, the Object, 156, and Quality, 232. It has also been employed as the Object with *obliscor*, 305, and in such phrases as

pars militum, in which it denotes the whole. The Genitive in this use is called the *Partitive Genitive*.

- 409 **Rule.**—The Partitive Genitive is used to denote the whole of which the modified word is a part.

W. 355; B. 201; AG. 216; H. 440, 5–443.

THE DATIVE

- 410 The Dative has been used chiefly as the Indirect Object, 37, to denote the Possessor, 45, and with Compound Verbs, 344. The Dative with *persuādeō* also represents the construction with a considerable class of verbs.

- 411 **Rule.**—The Dative is used with intransitive verbs meaning *favor, please, trust, assist* (and their opposites), *command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, persuade*.¹

W. 330; B. 187, ii; AG. 227; H. 426, 1.

(a) It is evident that the passive of these verbs can only be used impersonally, e. g., *I am persuaded, mihi persuādētur*.

- 412 Certain adjectives like *grātus, idōneus, similis*, and *dissimilis* from their meanings are used with the dative.

- 413 **Rule.**—The Dative is used with Adjectives meaning *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, equal, near, and dear*, and with others of like or opposite meaning.

W. 333; B. 192; AG. 234; H. 434.

¹ Many of these verbs are used with the dative in English, but this is not apparent, because our language has lost most of its inflectional endings.

- 414 Two constructions which have not yet been employed are illustrated by the following:

415

EXAMPLES

1. **Māgnō ūsui nostris fuit.** *It was of great service to our men.*
2. **Cohortēs castris praesidiō relinquit.** *He leaves the cohorts for the defense of the camp.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the datives **ūsui**, **praesidiō** are in the predicate, are abstract nouns, and express either that which the subject tends to become or the purpose of the verb's action. Such a dative is called the *Predicate Dative*.

- 416 **Rule.**—The Predicate Dative is used to express Tendency or Purpose.

W. 341-345; B. 191; AG. 233; H. 433.

- 417 Notice that in the sentences in 415, the datives **nostris**, **castris** are not dependent on any single word, but rather on the entire sentence, and express the persons or thing with reference to which the statements are made. This construction is called the *Dative of Reference*.

- 418 **Rule.**—The Dative of Reference denotes the object interested or referred to in a statement.

W. 334-335; B. 188; AG. 235; H. 425, 2-4.

419

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| adeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus (ad + | cōgitō, -āre, to think. |
| eō), to approach. | comprehendō, -ere, -ndī, -pre- |
| aditus, -ūs, m. approach. | hēnsus, to arrest, seize. |

cōnferō , -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (con + ferō), to bring together.	palam , adv. <i>openly</i> (compare clam, 272).
dēmōnstrō , -āre, to point out, show.	praeter , prep. w. accu. <i>beyond, contrary to, besides</i> .
hūc , adv. <i>hither, to this place</i> (compare hic, 132).	quā , adv. <i>in what way, by what road</i> (quī).
opiniō , -ōnis, f. <i>opinion, belief, reputation</i> .	singulī , -ae, -a, <i>single, individual</i> .
	suspiciō , -ōnis, f. <i>suspicion</i> .

420 1. Crassus autem adulēscēns, cum aliquōs hostis accēdere animadvertisset, septimam cohortem labōrantibus nostris subsidiō misit. 2. Rēbus quae ad bellum ūsui erant hūc conlātis, suōs exīre prohibēbat timōrisque opīniōnem hostibus augēbat. 3. Hostēs autem putābant nullōs sibi esse parīs posse; sōlis deis concēdere cōnsuēscēbant. 4. Dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrōs quōs incolant nihil esse reliquī¹; quārē eis partem exercitūs subsidiō misit. 5. Ut omnem timōris suspiciōnem tolleret, alteram partem exercitūs misit quae Haeduīs bellum inferret. 6. Hic autem, nē aut inferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciōnem, paulātim rediit unde vēnerat. 7. Quam ob rem, quisquis is esset cūius operā Gallī excitātī essent, comprehendī atque interficī iussit. 8. Quārē Caesarem adiērunt palamque de eōrum iniūriis questī sunt quī eius beneficiis ūsī, amīcis eius nocērent. 9. Repetit omnīs ferē hominēs māgnae virtūtis ēsse neque ūllum ad eōs aditum esse mercātōribus. 10. Eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae antea cōgitāverat, lēgātis singulis in singulās² cīvitātēs missis, ipse flūmen trānsiit quā minimē altum erat.

421 1. Caesar left a cohort as protection for the baggage and returned by the easiest road.³ 2. Having found a

¹ Gen. modifying nihil, 409.

² One to each.

³ Translate, where the road was easiest.

suitable place for a camp, he built a fortified camp and made¹ a ten-foot ditch. 3. He sent his lieutenants, each with a legion,² to make war upon the Germans. 4. Everything that was useful for the storming of a city he brought to this place. 5. One part of the army he left in camp, another part he sent as a support to those who were fighting. 6. That they might remove every suspicion of fear, they went out of camp openly. 7. They come to him and show him that they have nothing except their arms left. 8. They arrested those through whose agency the lieutenant had been killed, and brought them to Caesar.

LESSON LIV

REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE

THE ACCUSATIVE

422 THE Accusative has thus far been used as the Direct Object, 31, as the Subject of the Infinitive, 328, with a number of prepositions to express various relations, and also to denote the Duration of Time, 174. Closely connected with this last use is the Accusative of Extent of Space, e. g., *sex milia passuum prōcēdit*, *he advances six miles*. The rule in 174 therefore may be expanded to read:

423 *Rule.*—Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative.

W. 324; B. 181; AG. 256, 257; H. 417.

¹ dūcere.

² Compare 420, 10.

424 The Accusative with **ad** or **in** has frequently been used to express the Aim or Limit of Motion, and since **236**, 10 names of towns *without* a preposition have been employed to express the same thing. Learn the following:

425 *Rule.*—The Aim or Limit of Motion is expressed by the Accusative with a preposition; but names of towns omit the preposition.¹

W. 325; B. 182; AG. 258, 2, *a*; H. 418.

THE ABLATIVE

426 The Ablative has been used in nearly all its important relations. If these various constructions be examined, it will be found that they fall into three classes corresponding to the English Objective case with *from*, *with*, and *in*.

427 This is historically due to the fact that the Latin Ablative represents three cases which have been blended into one—the Ablative proper or *from*-case, the Instrumental or *with*-case, the Locative or *in*-case.

428 The Ablative proper includes the

1. Ablative of Separation, **206**.
2. Ablative of Agent, **100**.
3. Ablative of Comparison, **190**.

429 The Instrumental Ablative includes the

1. Ablative of Accompaniment, **71**.
2. Ablative of Manner, **150**.
3. Ablative of Means, **110**.
4. Ablative with Deponents,² **297**.

¹ Also a few other words, of which **domum**, *home*, is the most frequent.

² This is properly also Ablative of Means.

5. Ablative of Cause, 119.

6. Ablative of Degree of Difference, 197.

7. Ablative of Quality, 234.

8. Ablative Absolute, 392.

430 To these should be added the Ablative in such expressions as *linguā differunt*, *they differ in language*; *virtūte praecedunt*, *they excel in bravery*; in which the Ablative specifies that with respect to which the statement is made.

431 *Rule.*—The Ablative of Specification denotes that with respect to which anything is or is done.

W. 398; B. 226; AG. 253; H. 480.

432 The Locative Ablative includes the

1. Ablative of Place, 55.

2. Ablative of Time, 176.

433

VOCABULARY

Avāricum , -i, <i>Avaricum</i> (a town in Gaul).	item , adv. <i>likewise, also.</i>
concurrō , -ere, -curri or -curri, -cursurus, <i>to run together.</i>	lingua , -ae, f. <i>tongue, language.</i>
coniungō , -ere, -iūnxī, -iūncus, <i>to join together.</i>	longinquus , -a, -um, <i>long, distant.</i>
conloquor , -i, -locūtus (<i>cum + loquor</i>), <i>to talk together.</i>	perpetuus , -a, -um, <i>continuous.</i>
cursus , -ūs, m. <i>course, march.</i>	plērumque , adv. <i>for the most part, generally.</i>
differō , -ferre, distuli, dilātus (<i>dis + ferō</i>), <i>to spread, scatter (in the present system, to differ).</i>	praecedō , -ere, -cessi, -cessurus (<i>prae + cēdō</i>), <i>to go before, excel.</i>
inde , adv. <i>from that place, after that.</i>	primō , adv. <i>at first.</i>
infrā , prep. w. accu. <i>below.</i>	subitus , -a, -um, <i>sudden.</i>
	ultrā , prep. w. accu. <i>beyond.</i>
	ūnā , adv. <i>at the same time, in company with.</i>

434 1. Complūria mīlia passuum ultrā eum locum prōgressus, petīvit ut sibi unā cum Caesare conloquī licēret. 2. Volēbat flūmen trānsire complūribus mīlibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi pōns esset perfectus. 3. Cōstābat inter omnis, quā arbitrārentur hostīs oppidum adire, iugum aditū difficillimō esse perpetuisque silvīs mūnītum. 4. Plērumque accidit ut cōsilia Gallōrum subita sint; māximam opīniōnem virtūtis habent, cēterōs Gallōs auctoritāte praecedunt. 5. Longis litteris dēmōstrant sē longinquam oppūgnātiōnem ferre nōn posse; quārē cum integris militibus Avāricum contendit. 6. Captō iugō et succēdentibus nostrīs, Haeduī quī haec animadverterant ad arma concurrunt, itemque aliōs hortantur. 7. Praeter opīniōnem cōsuētūdinemque accidit ut omnēs unā concurrant; primō māgnus clāmor auditur, inde cursus fit ad iugum. 8. Quoniam illa castra ab oppidō mīlia passuum multa absunt, hī nōn facile coniungī cum dūce possunt; altera castra multō propinquiōra sunt. 9. Caesar, lectīs litteris, sī palam conloquī vellent, concessit; sed hī omnēs linguā differunt. 10. Fossam inter turrīs dūxit,¹ quō tūtius ab subitō hostium impetū etiam singulī redire possent.

435 1. They marched seven miles on that day and pitched camp one mile from the town. 2. Though tired out by the march and the flight, they dug the ditch through the entire night. 3. On one side the camp was protected by a continuous forest, on the other by a river. 4. For the most part they use horses in battle that they may retreat more easily. 5. At first they ran to arms with a shout; after that they approached the town in silence. 6. He hurried to Avaricum, because he learned that the city was being fortified by the enemy. 7. When Caesar arrived in this place, the whole state was in arms; but the

¹ fossam dūcere, to make a ditch.

Romans were superior in the number of troops. 8. He pitched the new camp ten miles below the old camp, and waited there several days.

READING EXERCISE

Octavian's Triumph and Rule

436 Bellis tōtō orbe ita cōfectis Octāviānus Rōmam rediit ubi trēs triumphōs ēgit,¹ ūnum ex Illyricō,² alterum ex Actiacā³ victōriā, tertium dē Cleopātrā. Tum Iānī geminī⁴ portās suā manū clausit, quae tantummodo his antea clausae erant, primō sub Nūmā⁵ rēge, iterum Titō Manliō cōsule⁶ post primum Pūnicum bellum.⁷ Iam rem publicam, quam duodecim annōs cum Antōniō et Lepidō tenuerat, sōlus per quattuor et quadragintā annōs administrābat. Nūllō tempore rēs Rōmāna magis florēbat: nam Octāviānus Rōmānō adiēcit imperiō plūrimās prōvinciās; vicit etiam proeliis Dācōs,⁸ et Germānōrum ingentis cōpiās cecidit, ipsōs quoque trāns Albim⁹ flūmen submōvit, quod longē ultrā Rhēnum est. Reddidērunt etiam Parthī¹⁰ legiōnum sīgna quae Crassō victō¹¹ adēmerant. Scythī et Indī, quibus antea Rōmānōrum nōmen

¹ Celebrated.

² Illyricum was north of Epirus in Greece.

³ An adjective formed from *Actium*.

⁴ Janus, the god of gates and doors, was called *geminus*, *double*, because he was represented with two faces looking in opposite directions. His temple, near the northeast corner of the Forum, was always open in time of war.

⁵ Numa was the second king of Rome.

⁶ 235 B. C.

⁷ The First Punic War lasted from 264–241 B. C.

⁸ The Dacians lived north of the Danube, in and around the modern Roumania.

⁹ The Albis was probably the modern Elbe.

¹⁰ The Parthians were the foes most feared by the Romans in the East.

¹¹ In 53 B. C.

incōgnitum fuerat, dōna et lēgātōs ad eum misērunt. Tantō amōre ¹³ etiam apud barbarōs fuit ut rēgēs, populi Rōmānī amīcī, in honōrem eius conderent urbēs quās Caesarēas nōminārent, sicut in Maurētāniā ¹⁴ ā rēge Iubā, et in Palaestīnā, quae postea urbs erat clārissima. Octāviānō māximī honōrēs ā senātū dēlāti sunt: ipse Augustus nōminātus et in eius hōnōrem mēnsis sextilis eōdem nōmine est appellātus quod illō mēse bellis cīvilibus finis est impositus. Multa mala lūxuriāque civium gravibus lēgibus suppliciisque ita coercuit ut ob haec facta pater patriae quoque appellātus sit. Obiit in oppidō Campaniae Nōlā; ¹⁵ sepultus est Rōmae in campō Martiō. Post mortem Dīvus appellātus est.

437

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>to add.</i>	divus, -a, -um, <i>divine.</i>
adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus, <i>to take away.</i>	duodecim, <i>twelve.</i>
bis, <i>adv. twice.</i>	floreō, -ēre, florui, —, <i>to be prosperous.</i>
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, <i>to cut down, kill, annihilate.</i>	Iānus, -i, <i>m. Janus.</i>
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, <i>to close.</i>	incōgnitus, -a, -um, <i>unknown.</i>
coerceō, -ēre, -ercui, -ercitus, <i>to check, restrain.</i>	lūxuria, -ae, <i>f. luxury.</i>
condō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, <i>to found.</i>	nōminō, -āre, <i>to name.</i>
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, <i>to offer, grant.</i>	obeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, <i>to die.</i>
	quadringintā, <i>forty.</i>
	quattuor, <i>four.</i>
	sepeliō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), sepultus, <i>to bury.</i>

¹³ 234.¹⁴ The modern Algiers and Morocco.¹⁵ A town about fifteen miles east of Naples.¹⁶ The locative (24), *at Rome.*

<p>sextilis, -e, the sixth (used only with reference to the month). sicut, adv. as.</p>	<p>submoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, to remove. tantummodo, adv. only. trēs, tria, three (473).</p>
--	---

LESSON LV

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

- 438** LEARN the Future Active Participle and the Gerundive of all the paradigm verbs, **479–489**.

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

- 439** The Future Active Participle with **sum** forms the Active Periphrastic Conjugation: Pres. Indic. **amātūrus sum, I am about to love**, Imperf. Indic. **amātūrus eram, I was about to love**, etc.

A complete synopsis is given, **479, a**.

- 440** This Periphrastic Conjugation may be used in any of the active constructions of the verb where the meaning allows.

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

- 441** The Gerundive with **sum** forms the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: Pres. Indic. **amandus est, He is to be (i. e., must be, ought to be) loved**. Imperf. Indic. **amandus erat, He was to be (ought to have been) loved**, etc.

A complete synopsis is given, **479, a**.

DATIVE OF AGENT

442

EXAMPLES

1. **Mihi oppidum est expūg-** *The town is to be (must be)*
nandum. *stormed by me.*
2. **Vōbis prōvincia erat dē-** *The province was to be (had)*
fendenda. *to be) defended by you.*

(a) Notice that this second Periphrastic Conjugation implies duty, necessity, or obligation. The person on whom the duty rests is expressed by the Dative;¹ as this person is virtually the Agent the construction is called the *Dative of Agent*.

443

Rule.—The Dative of Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the duty rests.

W. 339; B. 189; AG. 232; H. 431.

444

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|--|
| adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc- | offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātus |
| tus, to join to. | (ob + ferō), to present. |
| dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (dē | praesertim, adv. especially. |
| + ferō), to bring down, | quālis, -e, of what sort, as. |
| report. | rēgnum, -ī, n. kingdom, royal |
| discessus, -ūs, m. departure | power (regō). |
| (discēdō). | servitūs, -ūtis, f. bondage |
| eōdem, adv. to the same place. | (servus). |
| excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus | studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, to pay |
| (ex + cēdō), to go out from. | attention to, be eager for |
| lātē, adv. broadly. | (411). |
| obtineō, -ere, -uī, -tentus (ob + | utrimque, adv. from both |
| teneō), to maintain, hold. | sides. |

445

1. Cum intellegeret omnīs Gallōs celeriter ad bellum excitārī atque omnīs hominēs libertātī studēre, lātius sibi

¹ This is only one form of the Dative of Reference, 418.

exercitum mittendum esse putāvit. 2. Poenae timōre permōtī, nocentīs comprehēnsūrī erant interfectūrīque; dēmōnstrant sē perpetuā servitūte premi. 3. Ēiusmodi cōnsilium neque initūrī erant neque ūllum omnīnō bellum contrā eum gessūrī. 4. Eōdem impedīmenta nostrīs cōnferenda erant priusquam hostēs ad arma concurrerent; ad hostīs dēlātum est Caesarem castra cum oppidō mūrō coniūctūrū esse. 5. Ea apud eōs cōnsuētūdō est ut quī summum magistrātum obtineant, excēdere ex finibus nōn liceat. 6. Discessū Caesaris animadversō, Galli longinquīōrēs civitatēs sibi adiūnxerant; ad locum infrā pontem, inde Avāricum sē contulērunt. 7. Eō tempore, praesertim cum tālis oblāta esset potestās, quālis nunquam antea, exeundum sibi esse putāvērunt. 8. Utrīque integrī succēdunt; et, quod cōstābat montem mille passuum abesse, eōdem sua omnia contulērunt. 9. Subitō impetū oppidum cēpērunt; illum, quī rēgnum tot annōs obtinuerat, comprehēsum suppliciō gravī interfēcērunt. 10. Nacti idōneum ventum sub noctem ex portū exiērunt, et postridiē longius dēlātī ultrā locum cōstitūtum ad terram vērērunt.

- 446** 1. Caesar had to recall the men from work and to give the signal for battle at the same time. 2. They said they would go into whatsoever place Caesar should decide, and would carry their goods to the same place. 3. He thought that he ought to make war upon the Gauls, especially as the opportunity was offered. 4. The Haeduan reported to Caesar that all the Gauls were as a rule eager for a revolution.¹ 5. He thought that there would never be another opportunity such as² this was. 6. He who had held the royal power in his state for so many years was arrested and killed. 7. They said that they had to endure perpetual bondage and were eager for freedom.

¹ novae rēs.

² quālis.

LESSON LVI

GERUND AND SUPINE

447 LEARN the Gerunds and Supines of all the paradigm verbs, **479–489**.

THE GERUND

448 The Gerund is a verbal noun with the force of an active verb. The Infinitive supplies the nominative and accusative cases in the constructions of Subject and Direct Object, **325–327**.

EXAMPLES

1. *Loquendi finem fēcit.* *He made an end of speaking.*
2. *Ad audiendum parāti sumus.* *We are prepared to hear (for hearing).*
3. *Hominis mēns discendō alitur.* *Man's mind is nourished by learning.*

449 The Gerund may have a direct object, e. g., *spatium arma capiendī*, *time for taking arms*; but in place of the Gerund with the object accusative, the Gerundive in agreement with the noun is to be preferred.

450

EXAMPLES

1. *Cōnsilium urbis capiendae.* *A plan for taking the city.*
2. *Vēnērunt ad pācem petendam.* *They came to ask for peace.*
3. *Haec rēs Caesari difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat.* *This fact caused Caesar difficulty in forming his plan.*
4. *Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus.* *Brutus was killed in freeing his country.*

(a) Notice that in each example the Gerundive is a verbal adjective agreeing with its noun, which is in the case required by the sentence.¹

(b) Notice that in the second example *ad pācem petendam* expresses purpose and is equivalent to *ut (quī) pācem peterent*. This is one of the common ways of expressing purpose.

THE SUPINE

451

EXAMPLES

1. *Lēgātī vēnērunt rogātum auxilium.* *Envoys came to ask help.*
2. *Perfacile factū est haec perficere.* *To accomplish this is very easy (to do).*

(a) Notice that in the first example the Supine *rogātum* is used with a verb of motion to express purpose, being equivalent to *ut (quī) rogārent* or *ad auxilium rogandum*. This is the only use of this Supine.²

(b) The Supine in *-u* is rare, being used in a few expressions like the second example as Ablative of Specification.

452 *Rule.*—The Supine in *-um* expresses Purpose after verbs of Motion.

W. 654; B. 340, 1; AG. 302; H. 633.

453

VOCABULARY

aliēnus, -a, -um, another's, officium, -ī, n. duty, office, foreign (alius). function.
iūs, iūria, n. justice, right. perfacilis, -e, very easy.

¹ The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is rare, so that no example is here given.

² The future pass. infin. *amātum irī*, etc., belongs under this head, as *irī* is the pres. pass. infin. of *eō* used impersonally.

potius, adv. *rather*.

praeterea, adv. *besides*.

praestō, -āre, -stiti, —, *to excel, exhibit, perform*.

vel, conj. *and* adv. *or, even*.¹

- 454 1. Nullā in rē deerat lēgātus, et in hortandis militibus imperātōris et in pūgnā militis fortis officia praestābat. 2. Praeter cōsuētūdinem cotīdiē sub castra studiō pūgnandī vērunt hostēs; tandem Caesar certum diem conloquendī dicit. 3. Gallī sibi Germānōs adiūxerant ad sociōs nostrōs vel comprehendendōs vel interficiendōs; ex omnibus partibus Galliae eōdem concurrēbant hostēs. 4. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum nē sibi sociis-que noceret; dixerunt sē iūra, agrōs, arma Rōmānis sōlis permittere. 5. Perfacile factū esse dēmōstrat sine ūllā suspiciōne omnia quae ad proficiēdum pertineant, comparāre. 6. Alii cursū et pūgnā dēfessi interfecti sunt pūgnantēs; aliī² novā speciē equitum nostrōrum permōti sē dedērunt. 7. Praeterea lēgātī ad Caesarem vērunt ōrātum ut sibi potestās excēdendī fieret. 8. Pūgnātum est utrimque vehementer sub mūrīs; ubi nostri locō cēdere visī sunt, hūc undique concurritur. 9. Equitātū potius quam peditātū māximē valēbat imperātor noster; itaque suis cōpiis plērumque ad vastandōs agrōs hostium utēbātur. 10. Undique ad Haeduōs dēfendendōs convērunt ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus pūgnārent.

- 455 1. On the next day Caesar led forth his forces from each camp and gave the enemy a chance to fight.³ 2. Caesar was confident that no one would after that cross into Britain for the purpose of carrying on war. 3. The Gauls sent ambassadors to ask for aid, that they

¹ *aut* is exclusive: *aut Caesar aut nūllus*, either Caesar or nobody; but *vel* gives a choice: *vel hīc vel ille*, either this man or that (as you please).

² Compare 358, 7.

³ Compare 454, 7.

might not be obliged to fight in others' territory rather than in their own. 4. He showed him that it was very easy to get possession of the royal power in his state. 5. They got ready everything that was of use for besieging a town. 6. They injured the enemy greatly by laying waste their fields and setting fire to their buildings. 7. They sent an ambassador to beg that Caesar would not deprive them of their rights and their lands.

LESSON LVII

NUMERALS

456 LEARN the Cardinal numbers to 1,000 and the ordinals through the twenty-first, **473**.

457 Review the declension of *ūnus*, and learn the declension of *duo* and *trēs*, **469**; the other cardinals through *centum* are not declined except those compounds which have *ūnus*, *duo*, or *trēs*. The hundreds from *ducentī* to *nōngentī* are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

458 Review the declension of *mille*, **252**. All ordinals are declined like *bonus*.

459 1. *Discessū hostium Caesar exercitum in duās partēs dīvisit; quattuor legiōnēs milia passuum quīndecim in Haeduōs dūxit.* 2. *Ducentī hominēs pūgnantēs utrimque interficiuntur; omnia aedificia longē lātēque incenduntur.* 3. *Adiūnxit sibi sex cohortēs atque diē octāvō ex suis in finis aliēnōs prōgressus est.* 4. *Spē rēgnandī novīs rēbus studebat; sed illi in libertāte manēre quam servitūtem*

ferre mālēbant. 5. Etsi ille milia passuum quinque abesse hostis cērtior factus est, tamen misit equitēs qui cōgnōscerent quālis esset nātūra montis. 6. Fidē sociōrum perspectā, cum novem cohortibus peditum infrā pontem milibus passuum quattuordecim flūmen trānsiit. 7. Quōscumque adiit, hortābātur ut sē cum Germānis coniungerent; quīntō diē multa milia illōrum in ūnum locum convēnerant. 8. Diēs continuōs trēs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et hostibus potestātem pūgnandī fēcit. 9. Haeduī reliquaeque item civitatēs, cōgnitō Caesaris discessū, eōdem unde pridī vēnerant, rediērunt. 10. Urbis dēfendendae causā mūrūm fēcit in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque novem pedum dūxit.

- 460 1. He made a ten-foot ditch and a wall twelve feet high. 2. Three cohorts were left as a protection for the baggage, five were sent among the Haeduan. 3. On the eighth day he drew up his army in line across the river. 4. He learned that the enemy were twenty-five miles distant from the camp. 5. On the fifth day twenty thousand men arrived to defend the town. 6. The spears of these people are two feet shorter than those which the Haeduan use. 7. The soldiers worked at building¹ the camp thirty consecutive hours. 8. Two ships were carried out of their course² by the wind and were unable to make³ the harbor.

¹ Simply *built*.

² *dēferō*.

³ *capiō*.

Caesar's First Invasion of Britain (B. G. IV, 20-36)

In the late summer of 55 B. C. Caesar, having returned from a brief invasion of Germany, decided to cross to Britain in order to overawe the tribes living there and to put an end to the support given by them to the Gauls

1. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficiscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde
5 subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mer-
10 cātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsis quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique

[The numerals preceding the notes refer to the lines above.]

1. 1. *exiguā . . . reliquā*: abl. abs., 392.
2. *ad septentrionēs*: toward the north.
4. *bellis*: abl. of time when, 176.
5. *subministrāta* (esse): inf. in ind. disc.—*sī*: equivalent to *etsī*.—*ad bellum gerendum*: 450, b.
6. *sibi ūsuī*: 415-418.—*fore*: the subject is contained in the clauses *sī . . . cōgnōvisset*; in translating use the pronoun *it*: *he thought it would be . . . , if, etc.*
- 7 f. *adisset, perspēxisset, cōgnōvisset*: in ind. disc. representing the fut. perf. of the direct; *adlerō, perspēxerō, cōgnōverō*.
8. *loca*: 132.
9. *incōgnita*: probably the Gauls were not so ignorant as they seemed: but they were unwilling to help Caesar.
10. *illō*: adv., to that place.—*hīs ipsis*: i. e., *mercātōribus*.
12. *Galliās*: plural with reference to the separate divisions of Gaul.

mercātōribus, neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō,
 neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem
 15 ūsum belli habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur,
 neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem
 idōnei portūs reperīre poterat.

Volusenus and Commius sent on reconnoitering expeditions

2. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum face-
 ret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī
 longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explorātis omnibus
 rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus
 5 cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus
 in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvis undique ex finitimīs
 regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum
 bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō
 eius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā
 10 complūribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt
 quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rō-
 māni obtemperāre.

Quibus auditīs liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in
 eā sententiā permanērent, eos domum remittit et cum
 15 iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis

13. **quanta esset**, etc.: ind. questions depending on **reperīre**,

l. 17. What do they represent of the direct discourse?

14. **incolerent**: supply *eam*, i. e., *insulam*.

15. **ūsum**: *skill*.

2, 1. **priusquam . . . faceret**: 368.

2. **idōneum**: he did not, however, succeed in his attempt.—**nāvī
 longā**: *ship-of-war*.

4. **quam**: p. 100, n. 2.

5. **Morinōs**: this tribe lived nearest Britain.

7. **quam**: agreeing with *classem*, l. 8.—**Veneticum**: the Veneti,
 who lived in the northwestern part of Gaul, had been con-
 quered in 56 B. C.

11. **polliceantur**: 280.—**dare**: 327.—**imperiō**: 411.

15. **Atrebātibus**: a tribe living south and west of the Morini,
 conquered in 57 B. C.

rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū
 probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque
 auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit.
 Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitatēs hortēturque ut
 20 populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ven-
 tūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus quan-
 tum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē bar-
 baris committere nōn auderet, quīntō diē ad Caesarem
 revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

*After preparing a fleet of ninety-eight transports besides his men-
 of-war and receiving assurances of loyalty from the Morini,
 Caesar crosses the channel*

3. His cōstitūtis rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-
 dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in
 ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvis cōscendere et sē
 sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulō tardius esset adminis-
 5 trātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primis nāvibus
 Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus exposi-
 tās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cuius loci haec

-
16. **ibi**: i. e., among the Atrebatēs.
 17. **fidēlem**: yet three years later he turned against Caesar.
 18. **māgnī**: gen. of value.—**habēbātur**: *was considered*.
 19. **possit**: subordinate clause in ind. disc., 335.—**adeat, hortē-
 tur, nūntiet**: 335.
 20. **fidem sequantur**: *accept the protection of*.
 22. **facultātis**: modifying **quantum**, 409.
 23. **auderet**: 282.
 24. **revertitur, renūntiat**: see p. 138, n. 1.
 3, 1. **Hīs . . . rēbus**: i. e., his preparations.
 2. **tertiā vigiliā**: about midnight, as the night was divided into
 four watches. The date was very near August 26th, when
 the tide was high at 7.30 P. M.—**solvit**: *cast off*.
 3. **ulteriōrem portum**: a harbor eight Roman miles off, where
 eighteen transports had been detained by the wind.
 4. **paulō tardius**: they did not sail until three days later.
 5. **hōrā . . . quartā**: about nine o'clock. The distance across is
 about thirty miles; the Romans landed not far from Dover.

- erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī postes.
- 10 Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitratūs, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnisque militum convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnovisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque instābilem mōtum habērent) ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eis administrārentur. His dīmisis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancorīs, circiter milia passuum
- 20 septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvis cōstituit.

The Britains resist a landing

4. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitatū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliis utī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōn-

-
8. **montibus**: the cliffs which come close to the water's edge.
- 11 f. **dum . . . convenīrent**: *for the other ships to come up*, 370.
—**hōram nōnam**: about 3.30 P. M.
- 14 ff. **monuit**: the object clause depending directly on this is [ut] **ad nūtum . . . administrārentur**, *charged that everything be done*, etc.—**ut . . . postulārent**: *as the art of war and especially seamanship required*. These clauses have the imperf. subj., representing Caesar's **postulant**, as they are an integral part of the command. Why is the imperf. used?
15. **ut quae . . . habērent**: characterizing clause, *since they are things which involve*.
18. **aestum**: the tide set to the north and east about 6.30 P. M.
20. **litore**: probably between Walmer Castle and Deal, northeast of Dover.
- 4, 2. **essedāriīs**: *fighters in war-chariots*.—**quō . . . genere**: both horsemen and chariots.—**cōsuērunt** = **cōsuēvērunt**.
5. **altō**: *deep water*.

stitui nōn poterant; militibus autem ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressis simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illi aut
 10 ex aridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla cōnicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritatē ac studiō quō in pedestribus uti proeliis
 15 cōnsuērāt utēbantur.

Caesar manoeuvres for an advantage—Bravery of a centurion

5. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quarum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōrior et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmis incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui
 5 atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostis prōpelli ac submovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsui nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostris militi-
 10 bus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, qui

6. militibus: dat. of agent with dēsiliendum, etc., 443.

7. manibus: abl. abs.—oppressis: agreeing with militibus.

9. cum illi: while the enemy, 376.

12. Insuēfactōs: trained to this action.

13. generis: gen. w. imperitī.

14. pedestribus: on land.

5, 1. nāvis: subject of removēri, incitāri, cōstitui.

2. inūsitiōrior: less familiar, i. e., than that of the transports.

4. latus apertum: the right, for the enemies' shields protected their left.

5. inde: i. e., from the ships-of-war.

6. quae rēs: a manoeuvre which.

10. qui: i. e., is qui.

decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea
rēs legiōni fēliciter ēveniret: “Dēsilitē,” inquit, “commi-
litiōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē
meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōri officium praesti-
15 terō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prō-
iēcit atque in hostis aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri
cohortāti inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-
versī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus
cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvē-
20 runt.

The Romans land, but for want of cavalry cannot pursue the Britons

6. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostri tamen,
quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere
neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī
quibuscumque signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgno-
5 pere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadīs,
ubi ex litore aliquōs singulāris ex nāvī ēgredientis cōn-
spēxerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs
paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs
tēla cōniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, sca-

-
11. **obtestātus**: *appealing to*. The direct form of his appeal was:
Quod vōbīs fēliciter ēveniat, dēsilitē, etc.
17. **inter sē**: *one another*.—**tantum dēdecus**: as the loss of the
legion's eagle would be.
18. **ūniversī**: *with one accord*.
19. **subsecūtī**: i. e., the soldiers, the same as the subject of **cōn-
spēxissent**.
- 6, 1. **ab utrisque**: *on both sides*.
2. **firmiter insistere**: *get a firm footing*.
3. **poterant**: notice the number of imperfects describing the
progress of the battle.—**alius aliā ex nāvī**: *men from
different ships*.
- 6 f. **ubi . . . cōspēxerant, adoriēbantur**, etc.: a general state-
ment, *whenever they saw*, etc.—**singulāris**: *scattered soldiers*.
9. **scaphās**: *row-boats*.

- 10 phās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantis cōspēxerat his subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis, in hostis impetum fecērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequi
15 potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

Envoys from the Britons sue for peace

7. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum his lēgātis Commius Atrebās
5 vēnit, quem suprà dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in

-
11. *speculātōria nāvigia*: *scouting boats*, light and swift.—*quōs . . . cōspēxerat . . . submittēbat*: compare l. 6 above.
13. *simul*: = *simul atque, as soon as*.—*suis omnibus cōsecūtis*: *and all their comrades had joined them*. Notice that this is *logically* parallel to the preceding clause, but that by the use of the abl. abs. variety in expression is secured.
- 14 f. *neque*: *and yet . . . not*.—*longius*: *very far*.—*quod equitēs*, etc.: the cavalry were still waiting for a favorable wind. See 3, 2 ff.
16. *capere*: *make*.
17. *fortūnam*: Caesar firmly believed in his own "good luck."
- 7, 3. *datūrōs, factūrōs esse*: the subject of both is the same as that of *polliciti sunt*.—*quae imperāssēt*: ind. disc.; in the direct, *quae imperāveris, faciēmus*.
5. *suprà*: 2, 14 ff.
6. *praemissum [esse]*: perf. inf. pass.—*illi*: i. e., the Britons.—*ēgressum*: *when he had landed*.—*cum*: concessive.
7. *ōrātōris modō*: *in the character of (or as) an envoy*.

- 10 multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem
 15 statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē cīvitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Caesar's cavalry transports encounter a violent storm

8. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēviginti dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt. Quae cum ad
 5 propinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur;

-
11. **ignōscerētur**: impersonal, sc. *sibi*, *that their action might be pardoned*.
 13. **bellum sine causā**: the Britons were actually resisting an armed invasion.—**ignōscere**: the subject is the same as that of **dīxit**.
 15. **arcessitam**: *when fetched*.
 18. **convenire**: with **coepērunt**.
 8, 1. **post diem quartum**: *three days after*, according to our reckoning. The Roman counted the day with which he started as the first.
 3. **suprā**: chap. 3.—**sustulerant**: *had received on board*.
 5. **Britanniae**: 344.
 6. **tempestās**: a northeast wind, blowing from the North Sea.
 7. **aliae . . . aliae**: *some . . . others*.
 8. **inferiōrem partem**: somewhere southwest of Deal.

- 10 quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

The fleet is almost wrecked by the storm and high tide

9. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita tūc tempore et longās nāvīs, quibus Caesar exercitum trāsportandum
5 cūrāverat quāsque Caesar in aridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent—fūnibus, ancoris reli-
10 quisque armāmentis āmissis—ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deērant, quae ad

10. complerentur: *began to fill*; the impf. indicates that the action was incomplete.

11. adversā nocte: *in the face of darkness*; concessive, 392.

9, 1. eādem nocte: probably August 30th.—ut esset: 269.

2. aestūs māximōs: in the English Channel the high tides vary from twenty to thirty feet, and these were naturally very strange to the Italians, since the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible.

4. nāvīs: obj. of complēbat.—trāsportandum cūrāverat: *had had the army brought*. The gerundive in agreement with the object is thus used with verbs of Giving, Sending, Caring, Permitting, Undertaking, and the like to express purpose. One of the most common verbs in this construction is cūrō. W. 644, 2; B. 337, 7 b, 2; AG. 294 d; H. 622.

8. administrandī: *of handling them*.

9. fūnibus . . . āmissis: abl. abs., giving the reason for the ships' being ad nāvigandum inūtilēs.

11. māgna: with perturbātiō.—Id quod: *a thing which, as*.

13. quibus . . . possent: 282.

reficiendās nāvis erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat
 15 hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in
 hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

The Britons plan to renew hostilities

10. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs principēs Britanniae, quī
 post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlo-
 cūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvis et frūmentum Rōmānīs
 deesse intellegerent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum
 5 exiguitāte cōgnōscerent,—quae hōc erant etiam angus-
 tiōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportā-
 verat,—optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellione factā,
 frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in
 hiemem prōdūcere; quod hīs superātīs aut reditū inter-
 10 clūsīs nēminem postea belli inferendī causā in Britan-
 niam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrā-
 tiōne factā paulatim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex
 agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar suspects their purpose

11. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat,
 tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs
 dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.

14. ūsuī: 416.—omnibus cōnstābat: *all were agreed*. The sub-
 ject is hiemārī . . . oportēre.

15 f. in hiemem: *for the winter*.

10, 1. principēs: subject of dūxērunt, l. 7.

3 ff. cum . . . intellegerent, cōgnōscerent: 376.

5. quae: referring to castrōrum.—hōc: abl. of cause, expanded
 in quod . . . trānsportāverat.

7. optimum factū: 451, b.

8. rem . . . prōdūcere: *to prolong the campaign*.

9. hīs . . . interclūsīs: *if these should be overcome*, etc. Abl.
 abs. expressing condition, circumstances, 392.—reditū: 206.

11, 2. ex ēventū: *from what had befallen his ships*.—ex eō quod:
from the fact that.

3. fore: = futūrum esse.—suspiciābātur: *began to suspect*.

Itaque ad omnis cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et
5 frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et quae
gravissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque
aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs
erant ūsuī, ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque cum
summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim
10 nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset
effēcit.

He plans to thwart them. They attack a foraging party

12. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā
frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque
ullā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars
hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti-
5 tāret, eī quī prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant Cae-
sari nūntiāverunt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō
ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.
Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris
initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum

6. *materiā atque aere: timber and metal.* aes means both
copper and bronze, which were used for bolts and to sheathe
the beaks of the men-of-war, etc.

7. *quae: neuter; the antecedent is the (unexpressed) subject (ea)
of comparārī.*

10. *ut . . . posset: 269.—nāvigārī: impersonal, subj. of pos-
set. Translate, so that they could sail.*

12, 1. *geruntur: 370.*

2. *frūmentātum: 452.*

3 f. *cum . . . remanēret, ventitāret: causal.—hominum:*
i. e., the Britons.—*ventitāret: kept coming and going; fre-*
quentative verb, W. 273, 2; B. 155, 2; AG. 167 b; H. 364.

6. *quam cōnsuētūdō ferret: than usual.*

8 f. *id quod erat: the true state of the case, explained by
aliquid cōnsilī.—novī cōnsilī: 409.—initum [esse]:*
perf. pass. infin.

9. *cohortēs: belonging to the 10th legion. Four cohorts, being
ready, started at once, two took their places on guard, and
the remaining four followed as quickly as they could arm.*

- 10 in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duās in stationem succedere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla cōnici animadvertit.
- 15 Nam quod omnī ex reliquis partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectis reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant,
- 20 simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The Britons' use of chariots in battle

13. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. Primō per omnīs partēs perequitant et tēla cōniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātīm ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs

11. **armārī**: reflexive, *to arm themselves*.

12. **paulō longius**: *some little distance*.

13. **sustinēre**: *were holding their own*.—**cōnferta**: *crowded together*.

16. **pars ūna**: *only one part*; i. e., as yet uncut.—**suspiciātī**: *supposing*.

17 f. **dispersōs . . . occupātōs**: agreeing with **nostrōs**, brought over from the line above.

19. **incertīs ōrdinibus**: *because their ranks were unsteady*, 392.

13, 1. **ex essedis**: modifying **pūgnae**. These war-chariots of the Britons were drawn by two horses, and held six fighting men (**essedārīi**) besides the driver (**aurīga**).

3. **equōrum**: subjective gen., *caused by the horses*.

4. **cum . . . insinuāvērunt**: *when they have worked their way in among*, 374.—**equitum turmās**: apparently the Britons' cavalry, so their fighting-line was made up of horse and foot, the dismounted **essedārīi**.

conlocant ut, sī illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, āc
 10 tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclivī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī āc flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Rescue of the foragers. The Britons gather in great force

14. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris nōvitate pūgnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et com-
 5 mittendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agris reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et
 10 nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibē-

-
7. illi: the fighting *essedarii*.
 8. expeditum: *ready*.
 9. praestant: *display*.
 10. tantum . . . efficiunt: *become so expert*.
 11. incitātōs: *at full speed*.—sustinēre: *to check*.
 12. brevī: *within a short space*.
 13. iugō: which rested on the necks of the horses and supported the pole (tēmō).
 14. cōnsuērint: shortened form of cōnsuēverint.
 14, 1. perturbātis nostris: dat. with auxilium tulit.
 5. aliēnum: *unfavorable*.
 7 f. nostris . . . occupātis: with fortifying camp and getting supplies.
 8. quī . . . reliquī: i. e., the Britons. The antecedent of quī is the (unexpressed) subject of discessērunt; compare 11. 7.
 9 f. quae . . . continērent, prohibērent: *such as to, etc.*,
 282.

rent. Interim barbari nūtiōs in omnis partēs dimisē-
runt paucitatemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvē-
runt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum
sui liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expu-
15 lissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter māgnā
multitudine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra
vērērunt.

They are defeated in battle

15. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acci-
derat fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritate
periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter tri-
gintā, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est)
5 sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōn-
stituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum
impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt.
Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et viribus efficere
potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus
10 longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

Caesar returns to Gaul

16. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem
dē pāce vērērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem
anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem ad-
dūcī iussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmis nāvi-

13 f. **praedae faciendae, sui liberandī**: objective gen. with
facultās, 157; see also 450.—**darētur**, **expulissent**: what
do these represent of the direct discourse?

15, 1. **idem**: subject of **fore**, and explained by **ut . . . effugerent**.

3. **equitēs trigintā**: too few to be of service except in pursuit
of a defeated enemy.

4. **ante**: 2, 15; 7, 4.

8. **tantō spatiō**: *over as much distance*.—**quantum . . . potuē-
runt**: *as their strength enabled them to run*.

16, 4. **propinquā diē aequinoctī**: abl. abs.; the equinox is still
thought to be a stormy season.—**infirmis nāvibus**: abl.
abs.

5 bus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat.
Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam
noctem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continen-
tem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem por-
tūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infā
10 dēlātae sunt.

5. hiemī : *stormy weather*.—subiciendam : sc. esse.

7. solvit : Napoleon III reckoned that the return to Gaul was
made on September 11th or 12th, so that the stay in Britain
lasted about three weeks.

9. capere : *to make*.—paulō infā : to the southwest.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

462

FIRST DECLENSION

Stem in ā

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	rosa	rosae
GEN.	rosae	rosarum
DAT.	rosae	rosis
ACCU.	rosam	rosas
ABL.	rosa	rosis

463

SECOND DECLENSION

Stem in o

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	servus, serve	servi	dōnum	dōna
GEN.	servi	servōrum	dōni	dōnōrum
DAT.	servō	servis	dōnō	dōnis
ACCU.	servum	servōs	dōnum	dōna
ABL.	servō	servis	dōnō	dōnis

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	puer	pueri	ager	agri
GEN.	pueri	puerōrum	agri	agrōrum
DAT.	puerō	pueris	agrō	agris
ACCU.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs
ABL.	puerō	pueris	agrō	agris

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	vir	virī
GEN.	virī	virōrum
DAT.	virō	virīs
ACCU.	virum	virōs
ABL.	virō	virīs

THIRD DECLENSION

Mute Stems

	SINGULAR		
NOM., Voc.	prīnceps	rēx	miles
GEN.	prīncipis	rēgis	militis
DAT.	prīncipi	rēgi	militi
ACCU.	prīncipem	rēgem	militem
ABL.	prīncipe	rēge	milite

	PLURAL		
NOM., Voc.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	militēs
GEN.	prīncipum	rēgum	militum
DAT.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	militibus
ACCU.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	militēs
ABL.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	militibus

	SINGULAR			
NOM., Voc.	vōx	obses	virtūs	caput
GEN.	vōcis	obsidis	virtūtis	capitis
DAT.	vōci	obsidi	virtūti	capiti
ACCU.	vōcem	obsidem	virtutem	caput
ABL.	vōce	obside	virtute	capite

	PLURAL			
NOM., Voc.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
GEN.	vōcum	obsidum	virtutum	capitum
DAT.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtutibus	capitibus
ACCU.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
ABL.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtutibus	capitibus

Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cōsul	vīctor	homō
GEN.	cōsulis	vīctoris	hominis
DAT.	cōsulī	vīctorī	homīnī
ACCU.	cōsulem	vīctorem	hominem
ABL.	cōsule	vīctore	homine

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cōsulēs	vīctorēs	hominēs
GEN.	cōsulūm	vīctorūm	hominūm
DAT.	cōsulibus	vīctoribus	hominibus
ACCU.	cōsulēs	vīctorēs	hominēs
ABL.	cōsulibus	vīctoribus	hominibus

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	nōmen	honor	corpus
GEN.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
DAT.	nōminī	honōrī	corporī
ACCU.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
ABL.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
GEN.	nōminūm	honōrūm	corporūm
DAT.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus
ACCU.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
ABL.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus

Stems in i

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cīvis	hostis	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvis	hostis	nūbis
DAT.	cīvī	hostī	nūbī
ACCU.	cīvem	hostem	nūbem
ABL.	cīvī, -e	hoste	nūbe

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cīvēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvium	hostium	nūbium
DAT.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACCU.	cīvīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs
ABL.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	mare	animal
GEN.	maris	animālis
DAT.	mari	animāli
ACCU.	mare	animal
ABL.	mari	animāli

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	maria	animālia
GEN.	————	animālium
DAT.	maribus	animālibus
ACCU.	maria	animālia
ABL.	maribus	animālibus

Mixed Stems

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	arx	urbs	cliēs
GEN.	arcis	urbis	clientis
DAT.	arci	urbi	clienti
ACCU.	arcem	urbem	clientem
ABL.	arce	urbe	cliente

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	arcēs	urbēs	clientēs
GEN.	arcium	urbium	clientium
DAT.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus
ACCU.	arcēs, -is	urbēs, -is	clientēs, -is
ABL.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus

465

FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem in u

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	manus	cornū	domus
GEN.	manūs	cornūs	domūs
DAT.	manui, -ū	cornū	domui, -ō
ACCU.	manum	cornū	domum
ABL.	manū	cornū	domū, -ō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	manūs	cornua	domūs
GEN.	manuum	cornuum	domuum, -ōrum
DAT.	manibus	cornibus	domibus
ACCU.	manūs	cornua	domūs, -ōs
ABL.	manibus	cornibus	domibus

466

FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem in ē

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diēi	rei
DAT.	diēi	rei
ACCU.	diem	rem
ABL.	diē	rē

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus
ACCU.	diēs	rēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

467

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	bonus, bone	bona	bonum
GEN.	boni	bonae	boni
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACCU.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	boni	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonis	bonis	bonis
ACCU.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonis	bonis	bonis

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigri	nigrae	nigri
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACCU.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nigri	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigris	nigris	nigris
ACCU.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigris	nigris	nigris

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	miser	miserā	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserāe	miserī
DAT.	miserō	miserāe	miserō
ACCU.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	miserī	miserāe	miserā
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miseris	miseris	miseris
ACCU.	miserōs	miserās	miserā
ABL.	miseris	miseris	miseris

468

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
GEN.		audācis		audācium
DAT.		audāci		audācibus
ACCU.	audācem	audāx	audācis, -ēs	audācia
ABL.		audāci		audācibus

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.		amantis		amantium
DAT.		amanti		amantibus
ACCU.	amantem	amāns	amantis, -ēs	amantia
ABL.		amante, -ī		amantibus

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER		MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	
NOM., Voc.	fortis	forte		fortēs	fortia	
GEN.	fortis			fortium		
DAT.	forti			fortibus		
ACCU.	fortem	forte		fortis, -ēs	fortia	
ABL.	forti			fortibus		

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	acer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACCU.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācria, -ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

469

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Nine adjectives have *-ius* throughout in the Genitive Singular and *-ī* in the Dative Singular: *ūnus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūllus*, *nāllus*, *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, neuter. In the plural they are all declined like *bonus*. The following paradigms show the declension of four in the singular:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	utrius	utrius	utrius
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utri	utri	utri
ACCU.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
GEN.	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alteri	alteri	alteri
ACCU.	aliū	aliā	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

THE NUMERALS DUO AND TRĒS

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ACCU.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, -is	tria
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

470

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
GEN.	fortiōris		fortiōrum	
DAT.	fortiōri		fortiōribus	
ACCU.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
ABL.	fortiōre		fortiōribus	

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	_____	plūris	plūrium	
DAT.	_____	_____	plūribus	
ACCU.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	_____	plūre	plūribus	

471

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	pēior	pessimus
māgnus	māior	māximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus

facilis , <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
difficilis , <i>difficult</i>	difficilior	difficillimus
similis , <i>like</i>	similior	simillimus
dissimilis , <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior	dissimillimus
humilis , <i>low</i>	humilior	humillimus
gracilis , <i>slender</i>	gracilior	gracillimus

(posteri)	posterior, <i>later</i>	{ postremus, <i>latest, last</i> postumus, <i>late born</i>
(exteri)	exterior, <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus } { extimus, } <i>outermost</i>
(inferi)	inferior, <i>lower</i>	{ infimus } { imus } <i>lowest</i>
(superi)	superior, <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus, <i>last</i> summus, <i>highest</i>

POSITIVE (wanting)	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(Compare prae , <i>before</i>)	prior , <i>former</i>	primus , <i>first</i>
“ citrā , <i>this side of</i>)	citerior , <i>hither</i>	citimus , <i>hithermost</i>
“ ultrā , <i>beyond</i>)	ulterior , <i>farther</i>	ultimus , <i>farthest, last</i>
“ in , intrā , <i>in, within</i>)	interior , <i>inner</i>	intimus , <i>inmost</i>
“ prope , <i>near</i>)	propior , <i>nearer</i>	proximus , <i>nearest, next</i>

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene , <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male , <i>ill</i>	pēius	pessimē
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
parum , (<i>too</i>) <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū , <i>long</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe , <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē
	magis , <i>more</i>	māximē

NUMERALS

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i>	primus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>	I
2. duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus (alter), <i>second</i>	II
3. trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	III or IV
5. quinque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIII or IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIII or XIV
15. quindecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvigintī (octōdecim)	duodēvicēsimus	XVIII
19. ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	ūndēvicēsimus	XVIII or XIX
20. vigintī	vicēsimus	XX
21. vigintī ūnus (or ūnus et vigintī)	vicēsimus primus (ūnus et vicēsimus, etc.)	XXI
30. trīgintā	tricēsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	XXXX or XL
50. quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	LXXXX or XC
100. centum	centēsimus	C
101. centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēsimus primus, etc.	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēsimus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	ID, or D
600. sescentī	sexcentēsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	DCCCC

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1,000. mille	millēsimus	CIO, or M
5,000. quinque milia	quinqūēns millēsimus	ICD
10,000. decem milia	decīēns millēsimus	CCICD
100,000. centum milia	centīēns millēsimus	CCCICD

PRONOUNS

474

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE

SINGULAR

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
NOM., Voc.	ego	tū	_____
GEN.	meī	tui	sui
DAT.	mihi, mī	tibi	sibi
ACCU.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
ABL.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nōs	vōs	_____
GEN.	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestri	sui
DAT.	nōbis	vōbis	sibi
ACCU.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
ABL.	nōbis	vōbis	sē, sēsē

475

DEMONSTRATIVE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	hic	haec	hōc
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius
DAT.	huic	huic	huic
ACCU.	hunc	hanc	hōc
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	hi	hae	haec
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	his	his	his
ACCU.	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	his	his	his

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	illi	illi	illi
ACCU.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis
ACCU.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	is	ea	id
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius
DAT.	eī	eī	eī
ACCU.	eum	eam	id
ABL.	eō	eā	eō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	eī, ii	eae	ea
GEN.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eīs, iis	eīs, iis	eīs, iis
ACCU.	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eīs, iis	eīs, iis	eīs, iis

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	idem	e'adem	idem
GEN.	ēius'dem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
DAT.	eidem	eidem	eidem
ACCU.	eun'dem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLURAL			
NOM., Voc.	{ eidem iidem	eaedem	e'adem
GEN.	eōrun'dem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	{ eis'dem iis'dem	eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem
ACCU.	eōs'dem	eādem	e'adem
ABL.	{ eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	iste	ista	istud
GEN.	istius	istius	istius
DAT.	isti	isti	isti
ACCU.	istum	istam	istud
ABL.	istō	istā	istō
PLURAL			
NOM., Voc.	isti	istae	ista
GEN.	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istis	istis	istis
ACCU.	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istis	istis	istis

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
DAT.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
ACCU.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACCU.	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
ABL.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

476

RELATIVE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	quī	quae	quod
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACCU.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

477

INTERROGATIVE

SINGULAR

	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	quis	quid
GEN.	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quō

PLURAL

Like **quī** relative

(a) When the adjective form **quī** is used, the declension throughout coincides with that of the relative

478

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis (-quī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquid)
GEN.	alicū'ius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACCU.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquid)
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

NOM.	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	ali'quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACCU.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
GEN.	cūius'dam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACCU.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

NOM.	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACCU.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(a) **quisque**, *each*, **quisquam**, *any at all*; **sī quis**, *if any*, **nō quis**, *that not (lest)* any are all declined like **quis (quī)** interrogative,

REGULAR VERBS

479

FIRST CONJUGATION

Stem in *ā*

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE

amō, *I love*
 amāa, *thou lovest (you love)*
 amat, *he (she, it) loves*
 amāmus, *we love*
 amātis, *you love*
 amant, *they love*

PASSIVE

amor, *I am loved*
 amāris (-re), *you are loved*
 amātur, *he is loved*
 amāmur, *we are loved*
 amāmini, *you are loved*
 amantur, *they are loved*

IMPERFECT

amābam, *I loved, was loving*
 amābās, *you loved*
 amābat, *he loved*
 amābāmus, *we loved*
 amābātis, *you loved*
 amābant, *they loved*

amābar, *I was loved*
 amābāris (-re), *you were loved*
 amābātur, *he was loved*
 amābāmur, *we were loved*
 amābāmini, *you were loved*
 amābantur, *they were loved*

FUTURE

amābō, *I shall love*
 amābis, *you will love*
 amābit, *he will love*
 amābimus, *we shall love*
 amābitis, *you will love*
 amābunt, *they will love*

amābor, *I shall be loved*
 amāberis (-re), *you will be loved*
 amābitur, *he will be loved*
 amābimur, *we shall be loved*
 amābimini, *you will be loved*
 amābuntur, *they will be loved*

PERFECT

ACTIVE

amāvi, *I loved*
 amāvisti, *you loved*
 amāvit, *he loved*
 amāvimus, *we loved*
 amāvistis, *you loved*
 amāverunt (-ēre), *they loved*

PASSIVE

amātus { sum, *I was loved*
 es, *you were loved*
 est, *he was loved*
 amāti { sumus, *we were loved*
 estis, *you were loved*
 sunt, *they were loved*

PLUPERFECT

amāveram, *I had loved*
 amāverās, *you had loved*
 amāverat, *he had loved*

amātus { eram, *I had been loved*
 erās, *you had been loved*
 erat, *he had been loved*

amāverāmus, *we had loved*
 amāverātis, *you had loved*
 amāverant, *they had loved*

amāti { erāmus, *we had been loved*
 erātis, *you had been loved*
 erant, *they had been loved*

FUTURE PERFECT

amāverō, *I shall have loved*
 amāveris, *you will have loved*
 amāverit, *he will have loved*

amātus { erō, *I shall have been loved*
 eris, *you will have, etc.*
 erit, *he will have, etc.*

amāverimus, *we shall have loved*
 amāveritis, *you will have loved*
 amāverint, *they will have loved*

amāti { erimus, *we shall have, etc.*
 eritis, *you will have, etc.*
 erunt, *they will have, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem
 amēs
 amet
 amēmus
 amētis
 ament

amer
 amēris (-re)
 amētur
 amēmur
 amēmini
 amentur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
amārem	amārer
amārēs	amārēris (-re)
amāret	amārētur
amārēmus	amārēmur
amārētis	amārēmini
amārent	amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim	amātus {	sim
amāveris		sis
amāverit		sit
amāverimus	amāti {	simus
amāveritis		sitis
amāverint		sint

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem	amātus {	essem
amāvissēs		essēs
amāvisset		esset
amāvissēmus	amāti {	essēmus
amāvissētis		essētis
amāvissent		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, love (thou)	amāre, be (thou) loved
amāte, love (ye)	amāmini, be (ye) loved

FUTURE

amātō, thou shalt love	amātor, thou shalt be loved
amātō, he shall love	amātor, he shall be loved
amātōte, ye shall love	_____
amantō, they shall love	amantor, they shall be loved

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	<i>amāre, to love</i>		<i>amāri, to be loved</i>
PERF.	<i>amāvisse, to have loved</i>	<i>amātus esse, to have been loved</i>	
FUT.	<i>amātūrus esse, to be about to love</i>	<i>amātum iri, to be about to be loved</i>	

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	<i>amāns, -antis, loving</i>	GER.	<i>amandus, -a, -um, to be loved</i>
FUT.	<i>amātūrus, -a, -um, about to love</i>	PERF.	<i>amātus, -a, -um, loved, having been loved</i>

GERUND		SUPINE	
NOM.	—	ACCU.	<i>amātum, to love</i>
GEN.	<i>amandi, of loving</i>	ABL.	<i>amātū, to love, to be loved</i>
DAT.	<i>amandō, for loving</i>		
ACCU.	<i>amandum, loving</i>		
ABL.	<i>amandō, by loving</i>		

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	<i>amātūrus sum,</i>	{ <i>I am about to love</i>	<i>amātūrus sim</i>	
IMPERF.	“ <i>eram</i>		“ <i>essem</i>	
FUT.	“ <i>erō</i>			
PERF.	“ <i>fui</i>		“ <i>fuerim</i>	
PLUP.	“ <i>fueram</i>		“ <i>fuissem</i>	
FUT. PERF.	“ <i>fuerō</i>			

INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>amātūrus esse, to be about to love</i>
PERF.	“ <i>fuisse, to have been about to love</i>

PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	amandus sum,	{ <i>I have to (must)</i> <i>be loved</i>	amandus sim
IMPERF.	“ eram		“ essem
FUT.	“ erō		
PERF.	“ fui		“ fuerim
PLUP.	“ fueram		“ fuissem
FUT. PERF.	“ fuerō		

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amandus esse,	<i>to have to be loved</i>
PERF.	“ fuisse,	<i>to have had to be loved</i>

480

SECOND CONJUGATION

Stem in ē

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
habeō, I have, etc.	habeor, I am had, held
habēs	habēris (-re)
habet	habētur
habēmus	habēmur
habētis	habēmini
habent	habentur

IMPERFECT

habēbam, I was having, etc.	habēbar, I was had, held
habēbās	habēbāris (-re)
habēbat	habēbātur
habēbāmus	habēbāmur
habēbātis	habēbāmini
habēbant	habēbantur

FUTURE

ACTIVE

habēbō, *I shall have*, etc.

habēbis

habēbit

habēbimus

habēbitis

habēbunt

PASSIVE

habēbor, *I shall be had, held*

habēberis (-re)

habēbitur

habēbimur

habēbimini

habēbuntur

PERFECT

habuī, *I have had*, etc.

habuisti

habuit

habuimus

habuistis

habuērunt (-ēre)

habitus	{	sum, <i>I have been</i>
		es [had, held]
		est

habiti	{	sumus
		estis
		sunt

PLUPERFECT

habueram, *I had had*, etc.

habuerās

habuerat

habuerāmus

habuerātis

habuerant

habitus	{	eram, <i>I had been</i>
		erās [had, held]
		erat

habiti	{	erāmus
		erātis
		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

habuerō, *I shall have had*, etc.

habueris

habuerit

habuerimus

habueritis

habuerint

habitus	{	erō, <i>I shall have been</i>
		eris [had, held]
		erit

habiti	{	erimus
		eritis
		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
habeam	habear
habeās	habeāris (-re)
habeat	habeātur
habeāmus	habeāmur
habeātis	habeāmini
habeant	habeantur

IMPERFECT

habērem	habērer
habērēs	habērēris (-re)
habēret	habērētur
habērēmus	habērēmur
habērētis	habērēmini
habērent	habērentur

PERFECT

habuerim	habitus	sim
habueris		sis
habuerit		sit
habuerimus	habiti	simus
habueritis		sitis
habuerint		sint

PLUPERFECT

habuissem	habitus	essem
habuissēs		essēs
habuisset		esset
habuissēmus	habiti	essēmus
habuissētis		essētis
habuissent		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

habē, *have (thou)*
 habēte, *have (ye)*

habēre, *be (thou) had, held*
 habēmini, *be (ye) had, held*

FUTURE

habētō, *thou shalt have*
 habētō, *he shall have*
 habētōte, *ye shall have*
 habentō, *they shall have*

habētor, *thou shalt be had,*
 habētor, *he shall, etc. [held]*

 habentor, *they shall be had,*
 [held]

INFINITIVE

PRES. habēre, *to have*

habēri, *to be had*

PERF. habuisse, *to have had*

habitus esse, *to have been had*

FUT. habitūrus esse, *to be about to have*

habitum iri, *to be about to be had*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. habēns, -entis, *having*

GER. habendus, -a, -um, *to*

FUT. habitūrus, -a, -um, *be had*
about to have

PERF. habitus, -a, -um, *had,*
having been had

GERUND

NOM. ———
 GEN. habendī
 DAT. habendō
 ACCU. habendum
 ABL. habendō

SUPINE

ACCU. habitum
 ABL. habitū

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. habitūrus sum, *I am about to have. Etc.*

PASSIVE

PRES. habendus sum, *I must be had. Etc.*

THIRD CONJUGATION

Stem in ĕ
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PRESENT	PASSIVE
regō, <i>I rule</i> , etc.	regor, <i>I am ruled</i> , etc.	
regis	regeris (-re)	
regit	regitur	
regimus	regimur	
regitis	regimini	
regunt	reguntur	

IMPERFECT

regēbam, <i>I was ruling</i> , etc.	regēbar, <i>I was ruled</i> , etc.
regēbās	regēbāris (-re)
regēbat	regēbātur
regēbāmus	regēbāmur
regēbātis	regēbāmini
regēbant	regēbantur

FUTURE

regam, <i>I shall rule</i> , etc.	regar, <i>I shall be ruled</i> , etc.
regēs	regēris (-re)
reget	regētur
regēmus	regēmur
regētis	regēmini
regent	regentur

PERFECT

rēxī, <i>I have ruled</i> , etc.	rēctus {	sum, <i>I have been</i>
rēxistī		es [ruled, etc.]
rēxit		est
rēximus	rēctī {	sumus
rēxistis		estis
rēxērunt (-re)		sunt

PLUPERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
rēxeram, <i>I had ruled</i> , etc.		
rēxerās	rēctus	{ eram, <i>I had been</i> erās [<i>ruled</i> , etc.]
rēxerat		{ erat
rēxerāmus		{ erāmus
rēxerātis	rēcti	{ erātis
rēxerant		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

rēxerō, <i>I shall have ruled</i> ,		
rēxeris	[etc. rēctus	{ erō, <i>I shall have been</i> eris [<i>ruled</i> , etc.]
rēxerit		{ erit
rēxerimus		{ erimus
rēxeritis	rēcti	{ eritis
rēxerint		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam	regar
regās	regāris (-re)
regat	regātur
regāmus	regāmur
regātis	regāmini
regant	regantur

IMPERFECT

regerem	regerer
regerēs	regerēris (-re)
regeret	regerētur
regerēmus	regerēmur
regerētis	regerēmini
regerent	regerentur

PERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
rēxerim		sim
rēxeris	rēctus	sis
rēxerit		sit
rēxerimus		simus
rēxeritis	rēcti	sitis
rēxerint		sint

PLUPERFECT

rēxissem		essem
rēxissēs	rēctus	essēs
rēxisset		esset
rēxissēmus		essēmus
rēxissētis	rēcti	essētis
rēxissent		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
rege, rule (<i>thou</i>)	regere, be (<i>thou</i>) ruled
regite, rule (<i>ye</i>)	regimini, be (<i>ye</i>) ruled

FUTURE

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule</i>	
reguntō, <i>they shall rule</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. regere, <i>to rule</i>	regi, <i>to be ruled</i>
PERF. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>	rēctus esse, <i>to have been ruled</i>
FUT. rēctūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule</i>	rēctum iri, <i>to be about to be ruled</i>

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	regēns, <i>ruling</i>	GER.	regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled</i>
FUT.	rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule</i>	PERF.	rēctus, -a, -um, <i>ruled, having been ruled</i>
GERUND		SUPINE	
NOM.	_____	ACC.	rēctum
GEN.	regendi	ABL.	rēctū
DAT.	regendō		
ACC.	regendum		
ABL.	regendō		

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. rectūrus sum, *I am about to rule.* Etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. regendus sum, *I must be ruled.* Etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION (*Continued*)

Verbs in -iō

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
capiō, <i>I take, etc.</i>	capior, <i>I am taken, etc.</i>
capis	caperis (-re)
capit	capitur
capimus	capimur
capitis	capimini
capiunt	capiuntur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
capiēbam	capiēbar
FUTURE	
capiam	capiar
capiēs	capiēris (-re)
capiet, etc.	capiētur, etc.

PERFECT

cēpi	captus sum
-------------	-------------------

PLUPERFECT

cēperam	captus eram
----------------	--------------------

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō	captus erō
---------------	-------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam	capiar
capiās	capiāris (-re)
capiat	capiātur
capiāmus	capiāmur
capiātis	capiāmini
capiant	capiantur

IMPERFECT

caperem	caperer
----------------	----------------

PERFECT

cēperim	captus sim
----------------	-------------------

PLUPERFECT

cēpissem	captus essem
-----------------	---------------------

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE

cape, take (*thou*)capite, take (*ye*)

PASSIVE

capere, be (*thou*) takencapimini, be (*ye*) taken

FUTURE

capitō, thou shalt take,
etc.capitor, thou shalt be taken,
etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES. capere, to take

capī, to be taken

PERF. cēpisse, to have taken

captus esse, to have been
takenFUT. captūrus esse, to be
about to takecaptum iri, to be about to be
taken

PARTICIPLES

PRES. capiēns, taking

GER. capiendus, -a, -um, to
be takenFUT. captūrus, -a, -um, about
to take

PERF. captus, -a, -um, taken

GERUND

GEN. capiendī, etc.

SUPINE

captum captū

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. captūrus sum, I am about to take. Etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. capiendus sum, I must be taken. Etc.

483

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Stem in ī

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE

audiō, *I hear*, etc.

audis

audit

audimus

auditis

audiunt

PASSIVE

audior, *I am heard*, etc.

audiris (-re)

auditur

audimur

audimini

audiuntur

IMPERFECT

audiēbam, *I was hearing*, audiēbar, *I was heard*, etc.

audiēbās [etc. audiēbāris (-re)]

audiēbat audiēbātur

audiēbāmus audiēbāmur

audiēbātis audiēbāmini

audiēbant audiēbantur

FUTURE

audiam, *I shall hear*, etc. audiar, *I shall be heard*, etc.

audiēs audiēris (-re)

audiet audiētur

audiēmus audiēmur

audiētis audiēmini

audient audientur

PERFECT

ACTIVE

audivi, *I have heard*, etc.

audivisti

audivit

audivimus

audivistis

audivērunt (-re)

PASSIVE

auditus	{	sum, <i>I have been</i>
		es [heard, etc.
		est

audīti	{	sumus
		estis
		sunt

PLUPERFECT

audiveram, *I had heard*, etc.

audiverās

audiverat

audiverāmus

audiverātis

audiverant

auditus	{	eram, <i>I had been</i>
		erās [heard, etc.
		erat

audīti	{	erāmus
		erātis
		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

audiverō, *I shall have heard*,

audiveris

audiverit

audiverimus

audiveritis

audiverint

[etc. auditus	{	erō, <i>I shall have</i>
		eris [been heard,
		erit [etc.

audīti	{	erimus
		eritis
		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam

audiās

audiat

audiāmus

audiātis

audiant

audiar

audiāris (-re)

audiātur

audiāmur

audiāmini

audiantur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE

audirem
audirēs
audiret

audirēmus
audirētis
audirent

PASSIVE

audirer
audirēris (-re)
audirētur

audirēmur
audirēmini
audirentur

PERFECT

audiverim
audiveris
audiverit

audiverimus
audiveritis
audiverint

auditus { sim
 { sis
 { sit

auditi { sīmus
 { sītis
 { sint

PLUPERFECT

audivissem
audivissēs
audivisset

audivissēmus
audivissētis
audivissent

auditus { essem
 { essēs
 { esset

auditi { essēmus
 { essētis
 { essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audi, *hear (thou)*
audite, *hear (ye)*

audire, *be (thou) heard*
audimini, *be (ye) heard*

FUTURE

auditō, *thou shalt hear, etc.*
auditō
auditōte
audiuntō

auditor, *thou shalt be heard,*
auditor
———
audiuntor [etc.]

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. audire , <i>to hear</i>	audiri , <i>to be heard</i>
PERF. audivisse , <i>to have heard</i>	auditus esse , <i>to have been heard</i>
FUT. auditūrus esse , <i>to be about to hear</i>	auditum iri , <i>to be about to be heard</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES. audiēns , <i>hearing</i>	GER. audiendus , -a, -um, <i>to be heard</i>
FUT. auditūrus , -a, -um, <i>about to hear</i>	PERF. auditus , -a, -um, <i>heard, having been heard</i>
GERUND	SUPINE
audiendi , -dō, -dum, -dō	auditum , audītū

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. **auditūrus sum**, *I am about to hear.* Etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. **audiendus sum**, *I must be heard.* Etc.

DEPONENT VERBS

CONJ. I	hortor ,	hortāri ,	hortātus ,	<i>to urge</i>
CONJ. II	vereor ,	verēri ,	veritus ,	<i>to fear</i>
CONJ. III	sequor ,	sequi ,	secūtus	<i>to follow</i>
CONJ. IV	potior ,	potiri ,	potitus ,	<i>to get possession</i>

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	hortor hortāris (-re) hortātur hortāmur hortāmini hortantur	vereor verēris (-re) verētur verēmur verēmini verentur	sequor sequeris (-re) sequitur sequimur sequimini sequuntur	potior potiris (-re) potitur potimur potimini potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potitus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potitus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secutus sim	potitus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secutus essem	potitus essem

IMPERATIVE

hortāre, etc. verēre, etc. sequere, etc. potire, etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortāri	verēri	sequi	potiri
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potitus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secutūrus esse	potitūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potitus

GERUND

hortandi,	verendi,	sequendi,	potiendi,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

SUPINE

hortatum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū potitum, -tū

(a) Notice that Deponent Verbs have the Active form of the Future Infinitive and the Participles of both voices.

IRREGULAR VERBS

485

Sum, esse, fuī

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

sum, *I am*
es, *you are*
est, *he (she, it) is*

PLURAL

sumus, *we are*
estis, *you are*
sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*
erās, *you were*
erat, *he was*

erāmus, *we were*
erātis, *you were*
erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*
eris, *you will be*
erit, *he will be*

erimus, *we shall be*
eritis, *you will be*
erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, was*
fuisti, *you have been, were*
fuit, *he has been, was*

fuimus, *we have been, were*
fuistis, *you have been, were*
fuērunt (-ēre), *they have been, were*

PLUPERFECT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
fuera m, <i>I had been</i>	fuerā mus, <i>we had been</i>
fuerā s, <i>you had been</i>	fuerā tis, <i>you had been</i>
fuerat , <i>he had been</i>	fuerant , <i>they had been</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	
fuerō , <i>I shall have been</i>	fuerim us, <i>we shall have been</i>
fueris , <i>you will have been</i>	fueritis , <i>you will have been</i>
fuerit , <i>he will have been</i>	fuerint , <i>they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	
sim	sī mus
sis	sīt is
sit	sint
IMPERFECT	
essem	essē mus
essēs	essēt is
esset	essent
PERFECT	
fuerim	fuerim us
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint
PLUPERFECT	
fuissem	fuisse mus
fuisse s	fuisse tis
fuisset	fuisse nt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	
es , <i>be (thou)</i>	este , <i>be (ye)</i>
FUTURE	
estō , <i>thou shalt be</i>	estōte , <i>ye shall be</i>
estō , <i>he shall be</i>	suntō , <i>they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
PRES.	<i>esse, to be</i>	FUT. <i>futūrus, -a, -um, about to be</i>
PERF.	<i>fuisse, to have been</i>	
FUT.	<i>futūrus, esse (fore), to be about to be</i>	

(a) *possum, posse, potui, to be able, can*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<i>possum, I can</i>	<i>possim</i>
	<i>potes, you can</i>	<i>possis</i>
	<i>potest, he can</i>	<i>possit</i>
	<i>possumus, we can</i>	<i>possimus</i>
	<i>potestis, you can</i>	<i>possitis</i>
	<i>possunt, they can</i>	<i>possint</i>
IMPF.	<i>poteram, I could</i>	<i>possem</i>
FUT.	<i>poterō, I shall be able</i>	
PERF.	<i>potui, I could</i>	<i>potuerim</i>
PLUP.	<i>potueram, I had been able</i>	<i>potuisssem</i>
F. P.	<i>potuerō, I shall have been able</i>	
INFIN. PRES.	<i>posse, to be able</i>	PERF. <i>potuisse, to have</i>
PART.	<i>potēns (adj.), powerful</i>	<i>[been able]</i>

(b) *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, to help*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<i>prōsum, I help</i>	<i>prōsim</i>
	<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōsis</i>
	<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsit</i>
	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsint</i>

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
IMPF.	pröderam , <i>I was helping</i>	prôdessem
FUT.	pröderō , <i>I shall help</i>	
PERF.	prôfui , <i>I helped</i>	prôfuerim
PLUP.	prôfueram , <i>I had helped</i>	prôfuissem
F. P.	prôfuerō , <i>I shall have helped</i>	
IMPER.	prôdes , prôdestō , etc.	
INFIN. PRES.	prôdesse	PERF. prôfuisse FUT. prôfutûrus esse
PART.	prôfutûrus , <i>about to help</i>	

- 487 **volō, velle, volui**, —, *to be willing, will, wish*
 nōlō, nolle, nōlui, —, *to be unwilling, will not*
 mālō, malle, mālui, —, *to be more willing, prefer*

	INDICATIVE		
PRES.	volō , <i>I wish</i>	nōlō , <i>I will not</i>	mālō , <i>I prefer</i>
	vis	nōn vis	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs , etc.	nōlam, nōlēs , etc.	mālam, mālēs , etc.
PERF.	volui	nōlui	mālui
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

	SUBJUNCTIVE		
PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlîmus	mālimus
	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
	velint	nōlint	mālint

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*)

IMPF.	vellem	nöllem	mällem
PERF.	voluerim	nöluerim	mäluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nöluissem	mäluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	_____	nöli	_____
		nölite	
FUT.	_____	nölitö, etc.	_____

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nölle	mälle
PERF.	voluisse	nöluisse	mäluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volöns	nölöns	_____
-------	---------------	---------------	-------

488

1 eö, ire, (ivī) ii, itūrus, go

INDICATIVE

PRES.	eö, is, it
	imus, itis, eunt
IMPF.	ibam, ibās, ibat
	ibāmus, ibātis, ibant
FUT.	ibō, ibis, ibit
	ibimus, ibitis, ibunt
PERF.	(ivī), ii
PLUP.	(iveram) ieram
F. P.	(iverö) ierö

SUBJUNCTIVE

eam, eās, eat
eāmus, eātis, eant
irem, irēs, iret
irēmus, irētis, irent
(iverim) ierim
(ivisse) isse

IMPERATIVE

i, ite, itö, itö, itöte, euntö

INFINITIVE

PRES. ire	PERF. (ivisse) isse	FUT. itūrus esse
------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------

PARTICIPLES

PRES. iēns, euntis	FUT. itūrus	GER. eundum
GERUND : eundi, -dō, -dum, -dō	SUPINE : itum, itū	

(a) The compounds **adeō, approach, ineō, enter**, and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive :

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES. adeor	IMPF. adibar	PRES. adear	
adiris	FUT. adibor	IMPF. adirer	
aditur	PERF. aditus sum	PERF. aditus sim	
adimur	PLUP. aditus eram	PLUP. aditus essem	
adimini	F. P. aditus erō	INFIN. adiri, aditus esse	
adeuntur		PART. aditus adeundus	

(b) In the perfect system of **eō** and its compounds the forms with **v** are extremely rare.

2 **fiō, fieri, factus sum, to be made, become**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES. fiō		fiam	
fis		fiās	
fit		fiat	
firmus		fiāmus	
fitis		fiātis	
fiunt		fiant	
IMPF. fiēbam		fierem	
FUT. fiam			
PERF. factus sum		factus sim	
PLUP. factus eram		factus essem	
F. P. factus erō			

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
PRES. fi	fite	PRES. fieri	
FUT. fitō	fitōte	PERF. factus esse	
fitō	fiuntō	FUT. factum iri	

PARTICIPLES

PERF. *factus, -a, -um*GER. *faciendus, -a, -um*

489

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRES.	<i>ferō</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferar</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>ferās</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>ferāris (-re)</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferat</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>ferātur</i>
	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferimur</i>	<i>ferāmur</i>
	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferātis</i>	<i>ferimini</i>	<i>ferāmini</i>
	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>ferant</i>	<i>feruntur</i>	<i>ferantur</i>
IMPF.	<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ferrer</i>
FUT.	<i>feram</i>		<i>ferar</i>	
PERF.	<i>tuli</i>	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>
PLUP.	<i>tuleram</i>	<i>tulisse</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>
F. P.	<i>tulerō</i>		<i>lātus erō</i>	

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	<i>fer</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
FUT.	<i>fertō</i>	<i>fertōte</i>	<i>fertor</i>	—
	<i>fertō</i>	<i>feruntō</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>feruntor</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferri</i>
PERF.	<i>tulisse</i>	<i>lātus esse</i>
FUT.	<i>lāturus esse</i>	<i>lātum iri</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	<i>ferēns</i>	PERF.	<i>lātus</i>
FUT.	<i>lāturus</i>	GER.	<i>ferendus</i>

GERUND : *ferendi, -dō, -dum, -dō* SUPINE : *lātum, -tū*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

THE following vocabulary contains all the words used in the preceding lessons and in the account of Caesar's Invasion of Britain given in § 461; but the words given in the special vocabularies to the reading exercises are not repeated here. The present infinitive only is given of verbs conjugated like *amō*. The component parts of compound verbs are shown in parentheses immediately after the verbs; allied words follow the meanings as in the vocabularies to the lessons. A numeral after the meanings refers to the lesson in which the word is first used, unless preceded by the sign of a section. The few abbreviations will be readily understood.

A

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>ā, ab, adverbial prefix and prep. w. abl., <i>from, by</i>, 9.</p> <p>abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (ab + dō), <i>to put away, to hide</i>; sē abdere, <i>to hide one's self</i>; abditus, -a, -um, <i>hidden</i>, 51.</p> <p>abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (ab + eō), <i>to go off, go away</i>, 47.</p> <p>absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus (ab + sum), <i>to be away, absent</i>, 13.</p> <p>āc, conj., see <i>atque</i>.</p> <p>accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ad + cēdō), <i>to approach, draw near</i>, 49.</p> <p>accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, <i>to fall, happen</i>, 51.</p> <p>accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad + capiō), <i>to receive, accept, get</i>, 37.</p> <p>ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., <i>sharp, keen, active</i>, 21.</p> | <p>aciēs, -eī, f., <i>line of battle</i>, 26.</p> <p>ācriter, adv., <i>sharply, eagerly</i> (ācer), 25.</p> <p>ad, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., <i>to, toward</i>; w. names of towns, <i>in the vicinity of</i>, 13.</p> <p>addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ad + dūcō), <i>to lead to, bring, induce</i>, 50.</p> <p>adeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (ad + eō), <i>to go to, approach</i>, 53.</p> <p>adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (ad + ferō), <i>to bear to, bring up</i>, 51.</p> <p>adflitō, -āre, to dash against, wreck, shatter, § 461.</p> <p>adfligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictus, <i>to shatter, injure</i>, § 461.</p> <p>adgregō, -āre, to gather, join, § 461.</p> <p>adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus (ad + agō), <i>to drive to, huri, cast</i>, § 461.</p> |
|--|--|

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival, access* (adeō), 53.
 adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, *to join to, attach, unite*, 55.
 adiuvō, -āre, -iūvi, -iūtus, *to help, aid*, 28.
 administrō, -āre, *to manage, carry on*, 15.
 admittō, -ere, -misi, -missus (ad + mitto), *to commit, allow, bring on one's self*, § 461.
 adorior, -iri, -ortus (ad + orior), *to rise up against, attack*, 44.
 adpropinquō, -āre, *to approach* (propinquus), 17.
 adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (ad + sum), *to be present*, 25.
 adulēscēns, -ntis, adj., *young; as a substantive, young man*, 46.
 adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach*, 31.
 adversus, -a, -um, adj., *opposite, unfavorable*, 51.
 aedificium, -ī, n., *building* (aedificō), 27.
 aedificō, -āre, *to build*, 9.
 aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., *sick, feeble*, 7.
 aegrē, adv., *feebly, with difficulty*, § 461.
 Aemilius, -ī, m., *Aemilius*, 37.
 aequinoctium, -ī, n., *equinox* (aequus, nox), § 461.
 aequus, -a, -um, adj., *level, equal, fair*, 39.
 aes, aeris, n., *metal, copper, bronze*, § 461.
 aestās, -ātis, f., *summer*, 20.
 aestus, -ūs, m., *tide*, § 461.
 aetās, -ātis, f., *age, time of life*, 39.

Africa, -ae, f., *Africa*, 32.
 ager, agrī, m., *field, land*, 6.
 agmen, -inis, n., *line of march* (agō), 26.
 agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead, do, discuss; grātiās agere, to express thanks*, 32.
 agricola, -ae, m., *farmer* (ager), 4.
 alacritās, -ātis, f., *eagerness, zeal*, § 461.
 Alcibiadēs, -is, m., *Alcibiades*, 35.
 aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *another's, others', foreign* (alius), 56.
 aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), *indef. pron., some one, some, any* (declined, § 478), 52.
 alius, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another* (decl. § 469), 41.
 alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other of two* (declined, § 469), 44.
 altitūdō, -inis, f., *height* (altus), 24.
 altum, -ī, n., *the deep* (altus), § 461.
 altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep*, 22.
 amicitia, -ae, f., *friendship, alliance, friendly relations* (amicus), 11.
 amicus, -ī, m., *friend* (amō), 4.
 amittō, -ere, -misi, -missus (ā + mittō), *to let go, lose*, 31.
 amō, -āre, *to love* (conj. § 479), 1.
 amor, -ōris, m., *love, affection* (amō), 17.
 ancilla, -ae, f., *maid-servant*, 1.
 ancora, -ae, f., *anchor*, § 461.
 angustē, adv., *narrowly, closely* (angustus), § 461.

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, close, confined*, § 461.

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus (animus + advertō), *to turn the mind to, notice*, 52.

animal, -ālis, n., *living being, animal*, 18.

animus, -ī, m., *mind, courage, soul*, 11.

annus, -ī, m., *year*, 20.

ante, adv. and prep. w. accu., *before*, 15.

antequam (ante + quam), conj., *before* (see § 367, n. 1), 47.

anteā, adv., *before, previously* (ante), 34.

Antiochus, -ī, m., *Antiochus*, 34.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, old* (ante), 6.

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open, exposed, unprotected*, § 461.

appellō, -āre, *address, call, name*, 9.

Appius, -ī, m., *Appius*, 31.

apud, prep. w. accu., *with, before, by, near, among*, 17.

Āpŭlia, -ae, f., *Apulia*, 37.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*, 27.

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle, standard, of a legion*, § 461.

āra, -ae, f., *altar*, 3.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to think, suppose*, 41.

• **arbor**, -oris, f., *tree*, 17.

arcessō, -ere, -sivī, -sītus, *to summon, send for*, § 461.

argentum, -ī, n., *silver, money*, 5.

āridus, -a, -um, adj., *dry*; neut. as substantive, **āridum**, -ī, *dry land, beach*, § 461.

arma, -ōrum, n. plur., *arms, weapons* (armō), 10.

armāmenta, -ōrum, n. plur., *equipment, tackle, rigging* (armō), § 461.

armō, -āre, *to arm, equip*, 21.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*, 19.

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia*, 28.

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., *Athenian*; as subst., *an Athenian*, 28.

atque, -āc, conj., *and, and also*, 31.

Atrebās, -ātis, adj., *Atrebatian*; **Atrebātēs**, -um, m. plur., *the Atrebates, a people of Belgic Gaul*, § 461.

atrōx, -ōcis, adj., *savage, frightful*, 22.

attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactus, *to touch, reach*, § 461.

auctōritās, -ātis, f., *influence, authority*, 28.

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, daring* (audāx), 16.

audācter, adv., *boldly* (audāx), 25.

audāx, -ācis, adj., *bold, daring* 21.

audeō, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep. v., *to dare* (see § 295), 38.

audiō, -īre, -ivī (-īī), -ītus, *to hear* (conj. § 483), 34.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, enlarge, magnify*, 28.

aurīga, -ae, m., *a charioteer, driver*, § 461.

aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*, 40.

autem, conj., *but, moreover, however*, 49.

auxillior, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to help, aid* (auxilium), § 461.

auxilium, -ī, n., *help, assistance*, 7.

Avaricum, -ī, n., *Avaricum*, now Bourges, 54.

avidus, -a, -um, adj., *eager*, 17.

B

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarian*, 28.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy, fortunate*, 23.

Belgae, -ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians*, 12.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*, 6.

bene, adv., *well* (*bonus*), 25.

beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness, favor* (*bene, faciō*), 50.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good* (decl. §§ 62, 467), 1 ff.

brevī, adv., *in a short time* (*brevīs*), § 461.

brevīs, -e, adj., *brief, short*, 21.

Britanni, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Britons*, 6.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain, England*, 3.

C

caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter, massacre*, 18.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven*, 27.

Caesar, -aris, m., (*Caius Julius*) *Caesar*, 12.

campus, -ī, m., *field, plain*, 4.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, *captus*, *to take, seize, capture* (conj. § 482), 33.

captīvus, -ī, m., *captive* (*capiō*), 27.

caput, -itis, n., *head*, 16.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj., *Carthaginian*; as substantive, *a Carthaginian*, 32.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear*, 2 ff.

Cassivelaunus, -ī, m., *Cassivelaunus*, a leader of the Britons, 49.

castra, -ōrum, n. plur., *a fortified camp*, 13.

cāsus, -ūs, m., *accident, event, occurrence*, 49.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason*; abl. causā w. gen., *for the sake of*, 10.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, *cantus*, *to be on one's guard, take care*, 45.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, *cessūrus*, *to withdraw, yield*, 42.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, quick*, 23.

celeritās, -ātis, f., *swiftness, speed* (*celer*), 30.

celeriter, adv., *swiftly, quickly* (*celer*), 16.

centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion*, 41.

certē, adv., *certainly, at least* (*certus*), § 461.

certus, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, determined, certain*; *aliquem certiorē facere*, *to inform one*, 22.

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., *all the rest, the others*, 7.

Chersonēsus, -ī, f., *the Chersonesus*, a peninsula of Thrace, 28.

Cīneas, -ae, m., *Cīneas*, a friend and envoy of king Pyrrhus, 31.

circiter, adv., *about* (with numerals; *circum*), § 461.

circum, adverbial prefix and prep. w. acc., *around*, 41.

circumdō, -āre, -dedī, -*datus* (*circum + dō*), *to put around, surround*, § 461.

circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —, *to surround, beset*, § 461.

circumveniō, -īre, -vēmī, -*ven-*

- tus (circum + veniō), to come around, surround, invest, 46.
- citō, adv., rapidly, quickly; superl. citissimē, with the greatest speed, § 461.
- citerior, -ius, adj. comp., hither, nearer (comp. § 471), 24.
- cīvis, -is, m. and f., citizen, 18.
- cīvitās, -ātis, f., citizenship, state (cīvis), 19.
- clādēs, -is, m., loss, disaster, 18.
- clam, adv., secretly, 33.
- clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, 17.
- clārus, -a, -um, adj., bright, clear, famous, 3 ff.
- classis, -is, f., fleet, 31.
- Claudius, -ī, m., Claudius, 31.
- cliēns, -entis, m., dependent, client, 19.
- coepī, coepisse, coeptus, defect. v., to begin; the present system is supplied by incipiō, -ere, 46.
- cōgitō, -āre, to think, consider, plan, 53.
- cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, to become acquainted with, learn, recognise, 34.
- cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus (cum + agō), to compel, force, collect, 32.
- cohors, -hortis, f., a cohort, one tenth of a legion, 19.
- cohortor, -ārī, -ātus (cum + hortor), dep. v., to encourage, § 461.
- collis, -is, m., a hill, 18.
- com-, con-, co-, adverbial prefix = cum, with, together.
- comes, -itis, m. and f., a companion, 15.
- commeātus, -ūs, m., transportation, supplies, § 461.
- commendō, -āre, commit, entrust, § 461.
- commilitō, -ōnis, m., fellow-soldier (miles), § 461.
- committō, -ere, -misi, -missus (cum + mittō), to engage in battle, 31.
- Commius, -ī, m., Commius, a chief of the Atrebatas, § 461.
- commodē, adv., conveniently, fitly, easily, § 461.
- communis, -e, adj., common, 50.
- comparō, -āre (cum + parō), to get ready, prepare, 14.
- compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, to fill, cover, 47.
- complūrēs, -a or -ia, adj. plur., several, a good many, 45.
- comprehendō, -ere, prehendi, prehensus, to arrest, seize, 53.
- concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessurus (cum + cēdō), to yield, withdraw, 47.
- concilium, -ī, n., council, conference, 14.
- concurrō, -ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursurus, to run together, 54.
- condiciō, -ōnis, f., terms, 32.
- cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj., crowded, close, § 461.
- cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (cum + ferō), to bring together, 53.
- cōnfestim, adv., promptly, hastily, § 461.
- cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (cum + faciō), to finish, perform, wear out, 45.
- cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus (cum + fidō), to trust, be confident, 38.

- cōnfirmō, -āre, to strengthen, establish, 20.**
cōnicō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw together, cast, hurl, § 461.
coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, to join together, unite, 54.
coniūnx, -iugis, m. or f., husband or wife (coniungō), 15.
coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy, plot (coniūrō), § 461.
coniūrō, -āre, to swear together, plot, conspire, 12.
conlocō, -āre, to station, place, 18.
conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, dep. v., to converse, 54.
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to attempt, 36.
cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, to mount, go on board ship, § 461.
cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus (cum + sequor), dep. v., to overtake, 37.
cōnsilium, -ī, n., plan, design, counsel, 18.
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to take a position, stand, halt, 43.
cōnspicō, -āre, -spexī, -spectus, to see, make out, observe, § 461.
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, to establish, place, station, 41.
cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, to agree; impers., it is agreed, is an established fact, 51.
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, to become accustomed, 51.
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., custom, habit, 51.
cōnsul, -is, m., consul, 17.
cōnsulō, -ere, cōnsulū, cōnsultus, to have regard for, care for, consult; aliquem cōnsulere, to consult a person; alicui cōnsulere, to look out for a person's interests, 49.
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, to exert one's self, hasten, 32.
continēns, -ntis, m., mainland, continent, § 461.
contineō, -ere, -tinuī, -tentus (cum + teneō), to hold back, keep in check, 27.
continuus, -a, -um, adj., consecutive, successive, 20.
contrā, prep. w. accu., against, 12.
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (cum + veniō), to come together, assemble, 42.
convocō, -āre (cum + vocō), to call together, assemble, 13.
coōrior, -īrī, -ortus (cum + orior), arise, spring up, § 461.
cōpia, -ae, f., plenty, abundance; plur. cōplae, troops, forces, 11.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing of an army, 26.
corpus, -oris, n., body, 17.
cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily (cotidiē), 38.
cotidiē, adv., every day, daily, 38.
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent, numerous, 51.
culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame, § 461.
cum, conj., when, because, since, although (see §§ 374-376), 48.
cum, prep. w. abl., with, 6.
cunctātor, -ōris, m., the Delayer, a term applied to Quintus Fabius Maximus (cunctor), 33.
cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to delay, § 461.

cupiō, -ere, -ivī (-ī), -ītus, to desire, be eager, 33.

cūr, adv., why ? 30.

cūra, -ae, f., care (cūrō), 2.

cūrō, -āre, to care for ; w. gerundive, to have a thing done, 4.

currus, -ūs, m., chariot, § 461.

cursus, -ūs, m., running, speed, 54.

custōs, -ōdis, m., a guard, 15.

D

dē, prep. w. abl., from, about, concerning, 9.

dē-, adverbial prefix, down from, away from.

dea, -ae, f., goddess (deus); dat. and abl. plur., deābus, 3.

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought, 44.

decem, adj. indeclin., ten, 23.

dēcertō, -āre, to fight, 13.

decimus, -a, -um, adj., tenth (decem), § 461.

dēclivis, -e, adj., sloping down, down hill, § 461.

dedecus, -oris, n., disgrace, § 461.

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus (dē + dō), give up, surrender, 34.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (dē + dūcō), to lead away, withdraw, 33.

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, to defend, 33.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (dē + ferō), to bring down, report, 55.

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, wearied, 45.

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (dē + faciō), to fail, be wanting, 48.

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (dē + iaciō), to throw down, cast, § 461.

deinde, adv., then, secondly, next, 32.

dēligō, -āre, to bind fast, moor, § 461.

dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī, —, to hide, conceal, § 461.

dēmessus, -a, -um, perf. part. of the following verb.

dēmetō, -ere, -messuī, -messus, to reap, cut down, § 461.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, to point out, show, 53.

dēnique, adv., finally, 33.

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (dē + pōnō), to put off, lay aside, § 461.

dēsiliō, -ire, -siluī, -sultus, to leap down, jump overboard, § 461.

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to cease, cease from, give up, 40.

dēspērō, -āre (dē + spērō), to give up hope, despair, 38.

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (dē + sum), to fail, 38.

dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus (dē + terreō), to frighten off, deter, 33.

deus, -ī, m., god, 10.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, on the right hand, 26.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, to say, tell, speak, 31.

diēs, -ēī, m., a day, time, 26.

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus (dis + ferō), to spread, scatter; in the pres. system, to differ, 54.

difficilis, -e, adj., difficult (facilis; compared, § 471), 23.

difficultās, -ātis, f., difficulty, trouble (difficilis), 41.
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy; w. abl., worthy of, 40.
diligentia, -ae, f., care, pains, attention, 11.
dimicō, -āre, to fight, 21.
dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus (dis + mittō), to send away, let go, 39.
dis-, di-, dif-, adverbial prefix, apart, away.
discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus (dis + cēdō), to go away, depart, 42.
discessus, -ūs, m., departure (discēdō), 55.
dispersus, -a, -um, perf. part. of dispergō, to scatter, § 461.
dissimilis, -e, adj., unlike (similis; compared § 471), 23.
diū, adv., long, 10.
diūtius, adv., comp. of diū.
dividō, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsus, to divide, separate, 50.
dō, dāre, dēdi, dātus, to give, 2 ff.
dolor, -ōris, m., pain, grief, 37.
dominus, -ī, m., master, owner, 4.
domus, -ūs, f., house, home (decl. § 465), 42.
dōnum, -ī, n., gift (dō), 5.
dubitō, -āre, to doubt, hesitate (dubius), 33.
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, 10.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, to lead (dux), 32.
dum, conj., while, so long as, until, 47.
duodecim, adj. indeclin., twelve, § 461.

duodēviginti, adj. indeclin., eighteen, § 461.
duplicō, -āre, to double (duo), § 461.
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, 22.
dux, ducis, m. or f., leader, 15.

E

ē, ex, prep. w. abl., out of, from, 18.
ē-, ex-, ef-, adverbial prefix, out of, out, completely.
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ē + dūcō), to lead forth, lead out, 46.
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (ex + faciō), to accomplish, 33.
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus (ex + fugiō), to escape, § 461.
ēius modī, adj. phrase, of that sort, such, 37.
egēns, -ntis, adj., needy, poor, 22.
egō, -meī, pers. pron., I (declined § 474), 40.
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, dep. v., to go out, depart, 49.
Ēlis, -idis, f., Elis, a district in the western Peloponnesus, 36.
enim, conj., for (compare nam), 30.
eō, -ire, (īvī) iī, itūrus, to go (conjugated § 488), 46.
eō, adv., to that place (is), 49.
eōdem, adv., to the same place (īdem), 55.
Ēpirus, -ī, f., Epirus, a district in northwestern Greece, 31.
epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle (compare littera), 2.
eques, -itis, m., horseman, knight (equus), 19.

- equester**, -tris, -tre, adj., *belonging to the cavalry, equestrian* (eques), 21.
- equitātus**, -ūs, m., *horsemen, cavalry* (eques), 26.
- equus**, -ī, m., *horse*, 7.
- errō**, -āre, *to wander, stroll*, 4 ff.
- ēruptiō**, -ōnis, f., *sally, sortie*, 47.
- essedā**, -ae, f., or **essedum**, -ī, n., *a war-chariot*, § 461.
- essedārius**, -a, -um, *one who fights from a chariot, a charioteer* (essedā), § 461.
- et**, conj., *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*, 1.
- etiam**, adv. and conj., *also, even*, 19.
- etsī** (et + sī), conj., *even if, although*, 39.
- Eurōpa**, -ae, f., *Europe*, 28.
- ēveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (ē + veniō), *to result*, § 461.
- ēventus**, -ūs, m., *outcome, event*, § 461.
- excēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ex + cēdō), *to go out from, depart*, 55.
- excitō**, -āre, *to arouse*, 45.
- exeō**, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (ex + eō), *to go out, leave, depart*, 50.
- exercitātiō**, -ōnis, *practice, training*, § 461.
- exercitus**, -ūs, m., *army*, 26.
- exiguitās**, -ātis, f., *scantiness, shortness* (exiguus), § 461.
- exiguus**, -a, -um, adj., *small, scanty, short*, § 461.
- existimō**, -āre, *to reckon, think*, 42.
- expediō**, -īre, -ivī (iī), -itus, *to get ready, arrange* (compare impediō), 35.
- expeditus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **expediō**, *unencumbered, lightly burdened*, 46.
- expellō**, -ere, -pullī, -pulsus (ex + pellō), *to drive out*, 36.
- experior**, -īrī, -pertus, dep. v., *to try, prove, experience*, 37.
- explōrō**, -āre, *to seek, search out, investigate*, § 461.
- expōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus (ex + pōnō), *to set forth, display*, § 461.
- expūgnō**, -āre (ex + pūgnō), *to capture by storm* (compare oppūgnō), 11.
- expectō**, -āre, *to look out for, wait for, expect*, 18.
- exterior**, -ius, comp. of **exterus**.
- exterus**, -a, -um, adj., *outer, foreign* (rare in positive; compared, § 471), 24.
- extrā**, prep. w. accu., *outside of*, 47.
- extrēmus**, -a, -um, super. of **exterus**, *last, farthest*, 24.

F

- Fabius**, -ī, m., *Fabius*, a famous Roman general, 33.
- fābula**, -ae, f., *story*, 1.
- facile**, adv., *easily* (facilis), 25.
- facilis**, -e, adj., *easy* (compared § 471), 23.
- faciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *to do, make*; pass., **fiō**, **fieri**, **factus** (§ 468), 33.
- facultās**, -ātis, f., *opportunity*, 45.
- fāma**, -ae, f., *fame, reputation, report*, 3.
- fēliciter**, adv., *happily, luckily, successfully*, 25.

ferē, adv., *nearly, about, almost*, 44.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *to bear, carry* (conjugated § 489), 51.

fidelis, -e, adj., *faithful*, § 461.

fides, -ei, f., *faith, pledge* (**fīdō**), 29.

fīdō, -ere, **fīsus**, semi-dep. v., *to trust*, 37.

figūra, -ae, f. *shape*, § 461.

filia, -ae, f., *daughter*; dat. and abl. plur., **filiābus** (**filius**), 2.

filius, -ī, m., *son*; voc. sing., **fili**, 5.

fīnis, -is, m., *end, limit*; plur., *boundaries, territory*, 18.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, bordering on*; m. plur. as subst., *neighbors* (**fīnis**), 11.

fīō, **fieri**, **factus**, pass. of **faciō**, *to be made, happen, result* (conjugated, § 488), 46.

firmiter, adv., *firmly, steadily*, § 461.

flectō, -ere, **flexī**, **flexus**, *to turn, direct, guide*, § 461.

fluctus, -ūs, m., *wave*, § 461.

flūmen, -inis, n., *river*, 19.

fore, fut. inf. of **sum**, = **futūrum esse**, § 461.

fortis, -e, adj., *brave*, 21.

fortiter, adv., *bravely* (**fortis**), 10.

fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery* (**fortis**), 28.

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune*, 42.

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch*; **fossam dūcere**, *to dig a ditch*, 43.

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus**, *to break*, § 461.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother*, 18.

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, *to get grain, forage* (**frūmentum**), § 461.

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain, supplies*, 11.

fruor, **fruī**, **fructus**, dep. v., *to enjoy*, 38.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain*, 49.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight* (**fugō**, **fugīō**), 19.

fugīō, -ere, **fugī**, **fugitūrus**, *to flee* (**fuga**, **fugō**), 33.

fugō, -āre, *to put to flight* (**fuga**, **fugīō**), 5.

funda, -ae, f., *sling*, § 461.

fūnis, -is, m., *a rope, cable*, § 461.

G

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, 10.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic* (**Gallus**), § 461.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *of Gaul, Gallic*; as subst., *a Gaul* (**Gallia**), 10.

gaudeō, -ēre, **gavīsus**, semi-dep. v., *to rejoice*, 37.

gēns, **gentis**, f., *family, tribe, clan*, 19.

genus, -eris, n., *kind, family, race*, § 461.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German*; as subst., *a German*, 16.

gerō, -ere, **gessī**, **gestus**, *to carry on, perform*, 31.

gladius, -ī, m., *sword*, 5.

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*, 3.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*; as a subst., *a Greek*, 28.

grātia, -ae, f., *gratitude, favor, kindness*; **grātias agere**, *to thank*; **grātiā habēre**, *to feel*

grateful; *grātiā* referre, to repay a favor, 5.
grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, agreeable, grateful* (*grātia*), 3.
gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe, serious*, 22.
graviter, adv., *severely, seriously* (*gravis*), 39.
grex, *gregis*, m., *flock, herd*, 15.

H

habēō, -ere, *habuī*, *habitus*, to have, hold; *grātiā* habēre, to feel grateful; *ōrātiōnem* habēre, to deliver a speech, 2 ff.
habitō, -āre, to live, dwell (*habēō*), 3 ff.
Haeduī, -ōrum, m. plur., the *Haeduan*s, an important people of Gaul, living between the Loire and the Saône, 12.
Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal*, the famous leader of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War, 33.
Hasdrubal, -alis, m., *Hasdrubal*, brother of Hannibal, 40.
hasta, -ae, f., *spear*, 10.
herba, -ae, f., *grass*, 7.
hiberna, -ōrum, n. plur., *winter quarters*, 27.
hic, *haec*, *hōc*, demonstr. pron., *this*; *hic . . . ille*, the latter . . . the former (declined § 475), 12.
hic, adv., *here, in this place*, 13.
hiemō, -ōre, to spend the winter, winter (*hiems*), 20.
hiems, *hiemis*, f., *winter*, 20.
Hispania, -ae, f., *Spain* (*Hispanus*), 34.

Hispanus, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish*; as a subst., a *Spaniard* (*Hispania*), 39.
hodiē, adv. (*hoc + diē*), *to-day*, 29.
homō, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man* (compare *vir*), 17.
honor, -ōris, m., *honor*, 17.
hōra, -ae, f., *hour, season*, 20.
Horātius, -ī, m., *Horace*, a famous Latin poet, 5.
hortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to encourage, urge, exhort, 36.
hortus, -ī, m., *garden*, 4.
hostis, -is, m., *enemy*, 18.
hūc, adv., to this place, *hither* (*hīc*), 53.
humilis, -e, adj., *low* (compared § 471), 23.

I

iam, adv., *already, now*, 13.
ibi, adv., *there, in that place* (*is*), 3.
idem, *eadem*, *idem*, demons. pron., the same (decl. § 475; *is*), 40.
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable*, 13.
ignis, -is, m., *fire*, 18.
ignōscō, -ere, *ignōvī*, *ignōtus*, to pardon (see § 411), § 461.
ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown*, § 461.
ille, *illa*, *illud*, demons. pron., *that*; *ille . . . hic*, the former . . . the latter (decl. § 475), 12.
illō, adv., to that place (*ille*) § 461.
impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; plur., *baggage* (*impediō*), 25.

impediō, -īre, -īvi (-īl), -ītus, to hinder, 34.

impeditus, -a, -um, perf. part. of impediō, hindered, entangled, embarrassed, § 461.

imperātor, -ōris, m., general (imperō), 27.

imperītus, -a, -um, adj., unskilled (perītus), 41.

imperium, -ī, n., a command (imperō), 27.

imperō, -āre, to command, order, 22.

impetrō, -āre, to obtain one's request, 18.

impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset, 27.

imprōvisō, adv., unexpectedly, 44.

imprudentia, -ae, f., lack of foresight, thoughtlessness, indiscretion, § 461.

īmus, -a, -um, superlative of īferus, lowest (see § 471), 24.

in, prep. w. accu. and abl., into, in, within, 4 and 14.

in-, adverbial prefix w. verbs, in, upon, towards; negative prefix w. adjectives, not.

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, to set fire to, burn, kindle, 35.

incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain (certus), 45.

incitō, -āre, to urge on, arouse, incite, 11.

incōgnitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown (compare cōgnōscō), § 461.

incola, -ae, m., inhabitant (incolō), 9.

incolō, -ere, -colui, —, to dwell, inhabit, 49.

incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, 36.

inde, adv., from that place, thence, then, 54.

indignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy; w. abl., unworthy of (dignus), 32.

ineō, -īre, -īi, -itūrus (in + eō), to go into, enter, begin, 49.

īnferior, -ius, comp. of īferus, lower (§ 471), 24.

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (in + ferō), to carry, bring upon, 51.

īnferus, -a, -um, adj., low (compared § 471), 24.

īnfirmus, -a, -um, superl. of īferus, lowest, 24.

īnfirmitas, -a, -um, adj., weak, infirm, § 461.

īnfra, prep. w. accu., below, 54.

īngēns, -ntis, adj., great, huge, serious, 32.

īnimīcus, -a, -um, unfriendly; as subst., private enemy (amīcus), 10.

īnīquus, -a, -um, adj., unequal, unfair (aequus), 41.

īnīūria, -ae, f., wrong, injury, outrage, 34.

īnopia, -ae, f., want, lack, need, dearth, 11.

īnquit, defect. v., said he, used in direct quotations, 36.

īnsīgnis, -e, adj., marked, remarkable, notable, 23.

īnsīnuo, -āre, to thrust in, make way into, § 461.

īnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to stand upon, keep one's footing, § 461.

īnstābīlis, -e, adj., unsteady, uncertain, § 461.

Institūtum, -ī, n., *practice, custom, institutions* (Instituō), § 461.

Instituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus, *to begin, establish*, 45.

Instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *arrange, draw up*, 48.

Insuēfactus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **Insuēfactiō**, *trained, accustomed*, § 461.

Insula, -ae, f., *island*, § 461.

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., *whole, fresh*, 51.

Intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to understand*, 42.

inter, adverbial prefix and prep. w. acc., *between, among*, 12.

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to cut off*, 47.

interea, adv., *meanwhile* (inter), 12.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + faciō), *to kill*, 35.

interim, adv., *in the meantime* (inter), 48.

interior, -ius, comp. adj., *inner* (compared § 471; inter), 24.

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (inter + mittō), *to stop, interrupt, let pass*, 44.

interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (inter + pōnō), *to put between, interpose*, § 461.

intimus, -a, -um, superl. of **interior**, *innermost* (compared § 471), 24.

intrō, -āre, *to enter*, 12.

inūsītātus, -a, -um, adj., *unaccustomed*, § 461.

inūtilis, -e, adj., *useless*, § 461.

inūitus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*, 36.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intens. demons. pron., *self, very* (declined § 475), 40.

is, ea, id, demons. pron., *that; he, she, it* (declined § 475), 14.

iste, ista, istud, demons. pron., *that, that of yours* (declined § 475), 40.

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*, 8.

ita, adv., *thus, in that way* (is), 21.

itaque, adv., *therefore* (ita), 4.

item, adv., *likewise, also* (is), 54.

iter, itineris, n., *journey, march*, 17.

iterum, adv., *again, a second time*, 31.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *to command, order*, 40.

iūdex, -icis, m., *judge* (iūs), 15.

iūdicō, -āre, *to judge* (iūdex, iūs), 40.

iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, ridge*, 50.

Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia*, 1.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice, law*, 56.

iuvenis, -is, m., *a youth* (iuventus), 28.

iuventus, -ūtis, f., *youth; collectively, young men, the youth*, 21.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to help, aid*, 13.

L

labor, -ōris, m., *work, labor*, 17.

labōrō, -āre, *to work, toil* (labor), 4.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, f., *Lacedaemon, Sparta*, 36.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, adj., *Lacedaemonian, Spartan*, 32.

laccessō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *to provoke, challenge, harass*, 49.
 laetē, adv., *gladly*, 25.
 lātē, adv., *broadly, widely* (lātus), 55.
 lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*, 1.
 latus, -eris, n., *side, flank*, 46.
 laudō, -āre, *to praise* (laus), 3 ff.
 laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory*, 16.
 lēgātīō, -ōnis, f., *embassy, legation* (lēgātus), 31.
 lēgātus, -ī, m., *envoy, ambassador, lieutenant* (lēgātīō), 14.
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*, 19.
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lectus, *to read*, 48.
 levis, -e, adj., *gentle, mild*, § 461.
 levis, -e, adj., *light, slight*, 24.
 leviter, adv., *lightly*, 25.
 liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*, 7.
 liber, librī, m., *a book*, 6.
 liberāliter, adv., *generously, kindly* (liber), § 461.
 liberī, -ōrum, m. plur., *freeborn children* (liber), 6.
 liberō, -āre, *to free* (liber), 7.
 libertās, -ātis, f., *liberty, freedom* (liber), 36.
 licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. v., *it is permitted, one may*, 33.
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*, 54.
 littera, -ae, f., *letter, of the alphabet*; plur., *a letter, an epistle*, 48.
 litus, -oris, n., *shore*, § 461.
 locus, -ī, m., *place, spot*; plur. loca, n., *places, situation*; locī, m., *topics*, 13.

longē, adv., *far off, at a distance, by far* (longus), 13.
 longinquus, -a, -um, adj., *long, far, remote* (longus), 54.
 longus, -a, -um, adj., *long, distant*, 1 ff.
 loquor, -ī, locūtus, dep. v., *to speak, talk*, 38.
 lūna, -ae, f., *the moon*, § 461.
 lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf*, 9.
 lupus, -ī, m., *wolf*, 5.
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*, 15.

M

magis, adv. comp., *more*; superl. māximē, *most* (compared § 472; māgnus), 25.
 magister, -trī, m., *master, teacher*, 6.
 magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistracy, office, a magistrate* (magister), 35.
 māgnitūdō, -inis, f., *size, greatness* (māgnus), 40.
 māgnoperē, adv., *greatly*, 16.
 māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large, loud* (compared § 471), 1 ff.
 māior, -ius, adj., comp. of māgnus, *larger, elder*; māiōrēs, *elders, ancestors*, 29.
 male, adv., *badly, ill, unsuccessfully* (malus), 25.
 mālō, mälle, mālū (magis + volō), *to prefer*, 44.
 malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, ill*, 2 ff.
 mandāta, -ōrum, n. plur., *orders, commands* (mandō), § 461.
 mandō, -āre, *entrust, commit, command*, § 461.
 māne, adv., *in the morning, early*, 39.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus,
to remain, 27.

manus, -ūs, f., band, company,
troop, 26.

Marcus, -ī, m., Marcus, 4.

mare, maris, n., sea, 18.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj., belong-
ing to the sea, maritime (mare),
50.

māter, -tris, f., mother, 22.

māteria, -ae, f., stuff, timber,
§ 461.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., early,
ripe, § 461.

māximē, superl. adv., most, 25.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, in
the middle of, 37.

membrum, -ī, n., limb, of the
body, § 461.

memoria, -ae, f., memory, 29.

mercātor, -ōris, m., trader, mer-
chant, 45.

metō, -ere, messuī, messus, to
reap, cut, § 461.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., mine,
3.

mīles, -itis, m., soldier, private,
15.

mīlitāris, -e, adj., relating to a
soldier; military; **rēs mīlitā-
ris, the science of war (mīles),**
44.

mille, adj. indeclin., a thousand;
plur. **mīlia, -ium;** the plural
is used as a substantive, while
the singular is an adjective,
30.

Miltiadēs, -is, m., Miltiades, the
Greek commander at Marathōn,
480 B. C., 28.

minimē, adv., superl. of minus,
least (compared § 472), 25.

minor, minus, adj., comp. of
parvus, less, smaller (compared
§ 471), 24.

minus, comp. adv., less, 25.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched,
unfortunate, 7.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, to
send, throw (weapons), 31.

mōbilitās, -ātis, f., quickness,
speed, § 461.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to
control, manage, § 461.

modo, adv., only, but, even; **nōn**
modo, not only, 40.

modus, -ī, m., manner, measure,
31.

moenia, -ium, n. plur., walls of
a city, fortifications, 18.

mōns, montis, m., mountain, hill;
summus mōns, top of the hill, 19.

mora, -ae, f., delay, 14.

Morinī, -ōrum, m. plur., the
Morini, a people living in Bel-
gic Gaul, § 461.

morior, morī, mortuus, dep. v.
to die (mors), 39.

moror, -ārī, morātūs, to delay
(mora), 38.

mors, mortis, f., death (morior),
19.

mōs, mōris, m., habit, customs,
35.

mōtus, -ūs, m., movement, dis-
turbance, uprising (moveō),
§ 461.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, to
move; **castra movēre, to break**
camp; signa movēre, to ad-
vance, 29.

muller, -eris, f., woman, 22.

multitūdō, -inis, f., crowd, mul-
titude, 30.

multō, adv., (*by*) *much, by far* (**multus**), 23.

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much*; plur., *many* (compared § 471), 2 ff.

mūniō, -īre, -ivī (ii), -ītus, *to fortify*, 36.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification, defenses* (**mūniō**), 48.

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*, 9.

Mūsa, -ae, f., *a muse*, 5.

N

nam, conj., *for* (compare **enim**), 14.

namque, conj., *for*, § 461.

nancīscor, -ī, **nactus**, dep. v., *to find*, 39.

narrō, -āre, *to tell, narrate*, 2 ff.

nāscor, -ī, **nātus**, dep. v., *to be born*, 48.

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *race, nation* (**nāscor**), 27.

nātūra, -ae, f., *nature* (**nāscor**), 13.

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor* (**nāvigō**), 3.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *sailing, voyage, navigation* (**nāvigō**), § 461.

nāvigium, -ī, n., *a boat*, § 461.

nāvigō, -āre, *to sail* (**nāvis**), 4 ff.

nāvis, -is, f., *ship*; **nāvis longa**, *man-of-war*, 19.

-ne, interrogative enclitic, 1.

nē, adv. and conj., *not, that not, in order that not, lest*; **nē** . . .

quidem, *not even*, 29, 40.

nec, see **neque**.

necessāriō, adv., *necessarily, of necessity* (**necessārius**), § 461.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, needful* (**necesse**), 28.

necesse, adj. indeclin., *necessary*; **necesse est**, *one must*, 39.

necō, -āre, *to kill*, 26.

nēmō, **neminis**, m., *no one, nobody*, 23.

nēquāquam, adv., *not at all, by no means*, § 461.

neque, conj., *and not*; **neque** . . . **neque**, *neither* . . . **nor**, 17.

Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Nervii*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul, 12.

neuter, **neutra**, **neutrum** (**nē + uter**), *neither* (declined § 469), 52.

niger, **nigra**, **nigrum**, adj., *black*, 7.

nihil, n. indeclin., *nothing*, 23.

nisi, conj. (**nē + sī**), *if not, unless*, 39.

noceō, -ēre, **nocuī**, **nocitūrus**, *to harm, injure*; **nocēns**, *hurtful, guilty*, 46.

noctū, adv., *by night* (**nox**), 46.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *by night, in the night* (**nox**), 48.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī** (**ne + volō**), *to be unwilling, not to wish* (conjugated § 487), 44.

nōmen, -inis, n., *name*, 17.

nōn, adv., *not*; **nōn modo** . . . **sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*, 2, 40.

nōndum, adv. (**nōn + dum**), *not yet*, 46.

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj. (**nōn + nūllus**), *some*, 36.

nōnus, -a, -um, adj., *ninth* (**novem**), § 461.

nostrer, **nostra**, **nostrum**, poss. pron., *our* (**nōs**), 14.

nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *known, familiar*, § 461.

novitās, -ātis, f., *newness, novelty, strangeness (novus), § 461.*

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, 2 ff.*

nox, noctis, f., *night, 20.*

nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud, 18.*

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (nō + ūllus), *none (declined § 469), 42.*

Nūma, -ae, f., *Numa, the second king of Rome, 30.*

numerus, -ī, m., *number, 12.*

numquam, adv., *never, 37.*

nunc, adv., *now (compare iam), 12.*

nūntiō, -āre, to announce, report (nūntius), 12.

nūntius, -ī, m., *a messenger, 27.*

nūtus, -ūs, m., *nod, sign, § 461.*

O

ob, prep. w. accu., *on account of, 36; adverbial prefix, towards, against.*

oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus, dep. v., *to forget, used with an objective genitive, 38.*

obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, 16.*

obtemperō, -āre, to obey, § 461.

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to implore, § 461.*

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (ob + teneō), *to hold, keep, possess, 55.*

occāsus, -ūs, m., *falling, setting, the west, § 461.*

occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, to cut down, kill, 35.

occultō, -āre, to hide, 17.

occupō, -āre, to seize, 16.

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, to go to meet, resist, 43.

ōceanus, -ī, m., *the ocean, 4.*

octōdecim, indeclin. num., *eighteen, § 461.*

odium, -ī, n., *hatred, 11.*

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus (ob + ferō), *to bring to, offer, 55.*

officium, -ī, n., *duty, office, 56.*

ōlim, adv., *once, formerly, 10.*

omnīnō, adv., *altogether, at all, 44.*

omnis, -e, adj., *every, all, 21.*

onerārius, -a, -um, adj., *of burden; nāvēs onerāriæ, transports (onus), § 461.*

onus, oneris, n., *load, burden, weight, § 461.*

opera, -ae, f., *work, attention; operam dare, to take pains, 34.*

opīnīō, -ōnis, f., *belief, expectation, reputation, 53.*

opertet, -ēre, oportuit, impers. v., *it is proper, one ought, 50.*

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to a town; as subst., a townsman, inhabitant (oppidum), 9.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town, 6.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *opportune, advantageous, § 461.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus (ob + premō), *to overwhelm, 46.*

oppūgnātīō, -ōnis, f., *siege, attack (oppūgnō), 42.*

oppūgnō, -āre (ob + pūgnō), *to besiege, attack, 10.*

opus, operis, n., *work, 45.*

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast, § 461.*

ōrātīō, -ōnis, f., *speech (ōrō), 43.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *speaker, pleader, envoy (ōrō), § 461.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, rank, 23.*

ōrō, -āre, to speak, beg, 30.

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus,
to show, 42.

P

pācō, -āre, to pacify, subdue
(pāx), 12.

paene, adv., almost (compare fere), 38.

palam, adv., openly, publicly
(compare clam), 53.

pār, paris, adj., like, equal, 51.

parātus, -a, -um, perf. partic. of
parō, ready, prepared, 13.

parō, -āre, to make ready, pre-
pare, 12.

pars, partis, f., part, share, 21.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, little
(compared § 471), 1 ff.

passus, -ūs, m., step, pace; as a
measure of length about five
feet; **mille passūs, 5,000 (Ro-**
man) feet, a (Roman) mile, 30.

pater, patris, m., father, 22.

patior, -ī, passus, dep. v., suffer,
bear, allow, 44.

patria, -ae, f., native land (com-
pare pater), 2.

paucī, -ae, -a, adj. plur., few,
28.

paucitās, -ātis, f., small number
(pauci), § 461.

paulatim, adv., little by little,
gradually, 51.

paulō, adv., by a little, slightly,
23.

paulum, adv., a little, a short
distance, 41.

pāx, pācis, f., peace (pācō), 15.

pecūnia, -ae, f., money (pecus),
38.

pecus, -oris, n., cattle, a herd, a
flock, 17.

pedes, -itis, m., a foot-soldier;
plur., infantry (pēs), 36.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., belong-
ing to the infantry, foot (pedes),
39.

peditātus, -ūs, m., infantry, foot
(pedes), 43.

pēior, pēius, adj., comp. of ma-
lus, worse (§ 471), 24.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, to
drive, 34.

per, adverbial prefix and prep. w.
accu., through, over, across, by
means of, 16.

percurrō, -ere, cucurri or cur-
ri, -cursurus, to run through,
run along, § 461.

perequitō, -āre, to ride over, ride
through, § 461.

perfacilis, -e (per + facilis);
adj., very easy, 56.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (per
+ ferō), to bear through, en-
dure, § 461.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (per
+ faciō), to accomplish, finish,
48.

periculōsus, -a, -um, adj., full of
danger, dangerous (periculum),
37.

periculum, -ī, n., danger, 5.

peritus, -a, -um, adj., skilled,
32.

permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mān-
sūrus (per + maneō), to re-
main, stay, § 461.

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus
(per + mittō), to let go, allow,
permit, 46.

permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus
(per + moveō), to move deeply,
excite, arouse, 50.

- perpetuus**, -a, -um, adj., *constant, uninterrupted, perpetual*, 54.
- Persa**, -ae, m., *a Persian*, 35.
- Persicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Persian (Persa)*, 28.
- perspicō**, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *to see through, examine, learn*, § 461.
- persuādēō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, *to persuade*, 31.
- perterreō**, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, *to frighten thoroughly, terrify*, 38.
- pertineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, —, *to pertain to, to reach*, 50.
- perturbātīō**, -ōnis, f., *confusion, disorder, alarm (perturbō)*, § 461.
- perturbō**, -āre, *to throw into confusion, alarm*, § 461.
- pervenīō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (per + veniō), *to come through, arrive*, 35.
- pēs**, pedis, m., *foot*; **pedem referre**, *to retreat*, 22.
- pessimus**, -a, -um, superl. of **malus**, *worst* (compared § 471), 24.
- petō**, -ere, petivī (-iī), petitus, *to seek, ask*, 31.
- Pharnabāzus**, -ī, m., *Pharnabāzus, a Persian satrap*, 35.
- pilum**, -ī, n., *javelin, a heavy spear*, 42.
- plānus**, -a, -um, adj., *flat, level*, § 461.
- plēnus**, -a, -um, adj., *full*, § 461.
- plērīque**, **plēraeque**, **plēraque**, adj. plur., *many, very many, the most*, 35.
- plērumque**, adv., *for the most part, generally*, 54.
- plūrimus**, -a, -um, superl. of **multus**, *most, very many* (compared § 471), 24.
- plūs**, **plūris**, compar. of **multus**, *more* (compared § 471; declined § 470), 24.
- poena**, -ae, f., *punishment*, 36.
- poēta**, -ae, m., *poet*, 3.
- polliceor**, -ērī, **pollicitus**, dep. v., *to promise*, 43.
- pōnō**, -ere, **posuī**, **positus**, *to place, put, put aside*, 39.
- pōns**, **pontis**, m., *bridge*, 19.
- populus**, -ī, m., *people*, 5.
- porta**, -ae, f., *gate*, 30.
- portō**, -āre, *to carry*, 11.
- portus**, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*, 30.
- poscō**, -ere, **poposci**, —, *to demand, ask*, 47.
- possum**, **posse**, **potuī** (potis + sum), *to be able, can* (conjugated § 486), 43.
- post**, prep. w. accu., *after, behind*, 18.
- posteā**, adv., *afterwards (post)*, 25.
- posterior**, -ius, comp. of **posterus**, *later* (compared, § 471), 24.
- posterus**, -a, -um, adj., *the following, next*; plur., **posterī**, *descendants*, 25.
- postquam** (post + quam), conj., *after*, 30.
- postrēmus**, -a, -um, superl. of **posterus**, *last, latest*, 24.
- postrīdiē** (posterus + diēs), adv., *the next day*, 49.
- postulō**, -āre, *to demand, ask*, 14.
- potestās**, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity*, 35.
- potior**, -irī, **potitus**, dep. v., *to get possession of*, 37.

potius, adv., *rather*, 56.

præcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (prae + cēdō), *to go before, excel, surpass*, 54.

praeceps, **praecipitis**, adj., *headlong, in haste, steep*, § 461.

praeda, -ae, f., *booty*, 13.

praedīcō, -āre, *to make known, announce*, § 461.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (prae + faciō), *to set over, put in command of*, 35.

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (prae + mittō), *to send forward*, 35.

praemium, -ī, n., *reward*, 6.

praesertim, adv., *especially*, 55.

praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, protection, assistance*, 9.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, —, *to excel, exhibit, perform*, 56.

praesum, -esse, -fuī (prae + sum), *to be over, in command of*, 43.

praeter, prep. w. accu., *besides, except, beyond*, 53.

praetereā, adv., *besides, more over* (praeter), 56.

premō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *to press, attack, oppress*, 36.

prīdiē, adv., *on the day before*, 49.

prīmō, adv., *at first* (prīmus), 54.

prīmum, adv., *first* (prīmus), 31.

prīmus, -a, -um, superl. of prior, *first* (compared § 471), 20.

prīnceps, **prīncipis**, m., *leader, chief*, 15.

prior, **prīus**, comparative, *positive wanting, former* (compared § 471), 24.

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj., *old, former*, § 461.

priusquam (prius + quam), conj., *before*, 47.

prīvō, -āre, *to deprive*, 24.

prō, prep. w. abl., *for, for the sake of, in the place of*, 16.

prō-, adverbial prefix, *forward, before*.

probō, -āre, *to approve*, 37.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (prō + cēdō), *to go forward, advance*, 46.

procul, adv., *far, far off*, 41.

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (prō + dō), *to betray*, § 461.

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (prō + dūcō), *to lead forward, advance*, 48.

proellor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to fight* (proelium), § 461.

proelium, -ī, n., *battle*, 10.

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure, setting out* (proficīscor), 43.

proficīscor, -ī, **profectus**, dep. v., *to set out, depart*, 37.

progredior, -ī, -gressus, dep. v., *to go forward, advance*, 41.

prohibeō, -āre, -hibuī, -hibitus (prō + habeō), *to prevent, hinder*, 29.

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (prō + iaciō), *to throw forward*, § 461.

prope, adv. and prep. w. accu., *near*, 44.

prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (prō + pellō), *to drive away, dislodge*, § 461.

properō, -āre, *to hurry, hasten*, 13.

propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring*; **propinquī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *relatives* (prope), 48.

propior, -ius, comparative, positive wanting, *nearer* (compared § 471; **prope**), 24.

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (prō + pōnō), *to set forth, tell, offer*, 48.

propter, prep. w. accu., *on account of*, 39.

prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus (prō + sequor), dep. v., *to pursue, follow*, § 461.

prōsum, -esse, -fuī (prō + sum), *to be useful, be of advantage to, to profit* (conjugated § 486), 43.

prōvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus, *to carry forward*, § 461.

prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus (prō + videō), *to provide*, 47.

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*, 25.

proximus, -a, -um, superl. of **propior**, *nearest, next* (compared § 471), 10.

puella, -ae, f., *girl* (puer), 1.

puer, puerī, m., *boy*, 6.

pūgna, -ae, f., *battle*, 31.

pūgnō, -āre, *to fight* (pūgna), 9.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, pretty*, 2 ff.

pulvis, -eris, m., *dust*, § 461.

putō, -āre, *to think*, 41.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus*, 31.

Q

quā, rel. adv., *where*, 53.

quaerō, -ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, *to ask, seek*, 42.

quālis, -e, interrog. and rel. adj., *of what sort ? as*, 55.

quam, conj., *than*; with superlatives, *as possible*, 22.

quamquam, conj., *although*, 45.

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj., *how great ? as great, as*, 44.

quārē, interrog. and rel. phrase (quā + rē), *why ? wherefore*, 52.

quartus, -a, -um, *fourth* (quatuor), 21.

-que, enclitic conj., *and*, 18.

queror, -ī, **questus**, dep. v., *to complain*, 50.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that* (declined § 476), 13.

quā, conj., *because*, 49.

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever* (declined § 476), 52.

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, one, a* (declined § 478), 37.

quidem, adv., *indeed, in fact ; nē . . . quidem, not even*, 45.

quies, -ētis, f., *rest, sleep*, 19.

quīn, conj., *but that, from, without* (used chiefly after negative expressions of doubting and hindering, §§ 270, 271), 33.

Quīntus, -ī, m., *Quintus*.

quis (quī), (quae), **quid** (quod), interrog. pron., *who ?* (for use of forms see § 136 a, b), 14.

quisquam, —, **quidquam** (quodquam), indef. pron., *any one, anything* (used chiefly in sentences in which a negative is expressed or implied; declined § 478), 41.

quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque** (quodque), indef. pron., *each, every* (declined § 478), 44.

quisquis, —, **quidquid**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever* (declined § 476), 52.

quō, interrog. and rel. adv., *whither? to what place? into which place, where*, 43.

quō, conj., *in order that* (used to introduce a purpose clause which contains a comparative, § 280 b), 35.

quoniam, conj., *since, because*, 49.

quoque, conj., *also, too*; following the word to which it belongs, 5.

quot, indeclin. interrog. adj., *how many? relative, as many as*, 36.

R

ratio, -ōnis, f., *reason, plan, method*, 33.

re-, **red**-, adverbial prefix, *back, again*.

rebelliō, -ōnis, f. (re + bellum), *renewal of war, revolt*, § 461.

receptus, -ūs, m., *a retreat, refuge*, § 461.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (re + capiō), *to take back, recover*; **sē recipere**, *to betake one's self*, 35.

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (re + dō), *to return, give back*, 32.

redeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (re + eō), *to go back, retire, return*, 52.

reditus, -ūs, m., *return (redeō)*, § 461.

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (re + dūcō), *to bring back, lead back*, 35.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus (re + ferō), *to carry back, re-*

port; **pedem referre**, *to retire, retreat*, 51.

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (re + faciō), *to make over, repair, rebuild*, § 461.

rēgina, -ae, f., *queen (rēx)*, 2.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, direction*, 27.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj., *royal (rēx)*, 39.

rēgnum, -ī, n., *kingdom (rēgnō)*, 55.

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus, a famous Roman*, 32.

relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relīctus, *to leave, abandon*, 34.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, left*, 14.

remaneō, -ēre, -mansī, -mānsūrus (re + maneō), *to stay behind, remain*, § 461.

Rēmī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi, a people of Belgic Gaul*, 13.

remigrō, -āre, *to return, move back*, § 461.

remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (re + mittō), *to send back*, § 461.

removeō, -ēre, -movī, -mōtus, *to move back, remove*, § 461.

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar*, § 461.

renūntiō, -āre (re + nūntiō), *to take back word, report*, 31.

reperiō, -īre, reperī, reperitus, *to find out, learn*, 49.

reportō, -āre (re + portō), *to carry back*, § 461.

rēs, rei, f., *matter, affair, business, thing*; **rēs militāris**, *the art of war, military science*; **rēs publica**, *the state*, 26.

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *to answer, reply*, 39.

revertor, reverti, reversus, dep. v., *to return*; in the perfect system the active forms **reverti, reverteram**, etc., are used, 42.
revocō, -āre (re + vocō), *to call back, recall*, 35.
rēx, rēgis, m., *king* (rēgnō), 15.
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine*, 27.
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank*, 19.
rogō, -āre, *to ask, request*, 18.
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*, 6.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman* (Rōma), 5.
rosa, -ae, f., *a rose*, 1.
rota, -ae, f., *wheel*, § 461.
rūrsus, adv., *back, again*, 32.

S

sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj., *sacred, holy*, 7.
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m., *priest* (sacer), 16.
saepe, adv., *often*, 28.
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*, § 461.
Saguntum, -ī, n., *Saguntum*, a city in Spain, 33.
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*, 42.
sapienter, adv., *wisely*, 25.
satis, adv., *enough*, 35.
scapha, -ae, f., *skiff, boat*, § 461.
sciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to know*, a fact (compare cōgnōscō), 34.
Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., *Scipio*, the name of a famous Roman family, 39.
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*, 5.
secundus, -a, -um, adj., *following, favorable* (sequor), 24.
sed, conj., *but*, 2.
semper, adv., *always*, 6.
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate* (senex), 32.

senex, senis, m., *old man* (declined p. 91, n. 1), 26.
sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, view, purpose* (sentīō), 32.
sentīō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to feel, perceive, think*, 35.
septem, indeclin. adj., *seven*, 20.
septentrīōnēs, -um, n. plur., *the seven plow-oxen* (the stars in the constellation of the Great Bear), *the north*, § 461.
septimus, -a, -um, adj., *seventh* (septem), 20.
sequor, -ī, secūtus, dep. v., *to follow*, 37.
servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery, servitude* (servus), 55.
servō, -āre, *to save, preserve*, 5.
servus, -ī, m., *slave*, 4.
sī, conj., *if*, 29.
sic, adv., *so*, 38.
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*, 35.
sīgnum, -ī, n., *sign, standard*; **sīgna inferre**, *to advance, charge*, 29.
silentium, -ī, n., *silence*, 40.
silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest*, 2.
similis, -e, adj., *like, similar to* (compared § 471), 23.
simul, adv., *at the same time*; **simul ac** (atque), *at the same time as, as soon as*, 34.
sine, prep. w. abl., *without*, 10.
singulāris, -e, adj., *single*, § 461.
singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one by one, singly*, 53.
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left hand*, 26.
socius, -ī, m., *ally*, 14.
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*, 41.
soleō, -ēre, solitus, semi-dep. v., *to be accustomed, be wont*, 37.

- sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., *alone, only* (declined § 469), 52.
- solvō**, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *to unbind, loose, weigh anchor*, § 461.
- spatium**, -ī, n., *space*, § 461.
- speciēs**, -ēī, f., *sight, appearance*, § 461.
- speculātōrius**, -a, -um, adj., *scouting*, § 461.
- spērō**, -āre, *to hope* (spēs), 41.
- spēs**, speī, f., *hope*, 29.
- spoliō**, -āre, *to strip, despoil*, 24.
- stabilitās**, -ātis, f., *firmness, steadiness*, § 461.
- statim**, adv., *at once, immediately*, 30.
- statiō**, -ōnis, f., *post, guard, duty*, § 461.
- strepitus**, -ūs, m., *noise, din, uproar*, § 461.
- studeō**, -ēre, studuī, —, *to be eager for, desire* (studium), 55.
- studium**, -ī, n., *eagerness, devotion, zeal*, 21.
- sub**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu. and abl., *under, to the foot of, at the foot of*, 34.
- subdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (sub + dūcō), *to lead up, draw up*, § 461.
- subiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (sub + iaciō), *to throw under, place under*, § 461.
- subitō**, adv., *suddenly* (subitus), 25.
- subitus** -a -um, adj., *sudden, unexpectedly*, 54.
- subministrō**, -āre, *to supply, furnish*, § 461.
- submitto**, -ere, -misi, -missus (sub + mittō), *to send up, send to one's assistance*, § 461.
- submoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (sub + moveō), *to drive off, dislodge*, § 461.
- subsequor**, -ī, -secūtus (sub + sequor), dep. v., *to follow closely*, § 461.
- subsidiū**, -ī, n., *reserve, support, resource*, 44.
- succēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (sub + cēdō), *to come up, approach, take the place of*, 51.
- Suēbī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Suebians, a powerful German people*, 41.
- suī**, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē, reflexive pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it* (declined § 474), 40.
- summus**, -a, -um, superl. of **superus**, *highest, the top of* (compared § 471), 24.
- Superbus**, -ī, m., *the Proud*, the name given King Tarquin, 27.
- superior**, -ius, compar. of **superus**, *upper, higher* (compared § 471), 24.
- superō**, -āre, *to surpass, excel, conquer*, 11.
- supplicium**, -ī, n., *punishment*, 36.
- suprā**, adv. and prep. w. accu., *above, beyond*, 41.
- suspiciō**, -ōnis, f., *suspicion*, 53.
- suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to suspect*, § 461.
- sustineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (sub + teneō), *support, hold out against, withstand*, 27.
- sustulī**, perf. indic. of **tollō**.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his own, her own, its own* (suī), 28.

Syria, -ae, f., *Syria*, 34.

T

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind*, 41.

tam, adv., *so*, 38.

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, yet, still*, 29.

tandem, adv., *at last*, 43.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great*, 30.

tardē, adv., *slowly, late*; **paulō tardius**, *rather slowly*, § 461.

Tarentīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Tarentine*, relating to Tarentum, a city of southern Italy, 31.

Tarquīnius, -ī, m., *Tarquin*, the last king of Rome, 27.

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon, spear*, 29.

temerē, adv., *recklessly, rashly*, § 461.

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole* (of a chariot or wagon), § 461.

tempestās, -ātis, f., *weather, storm* (tempus), § 461.

templum, -ī, n., *temple*, 10.

tempus, -oris, n., *time*, 21.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, *tentus*, *to hold*, 27.

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young*, 7.

tergum, -ī, n., *back*, 33.

terra, -ae, f., *earth, land*, 4.

terreō, -ēre, terruī, *territus*, *to frighten*, 30.

terror, -ōris, m., *fright, alarm*, § 461.

tertius, -a, -um, adj., *third* (trēs), 20.

Tiberis, -is, m., *the Tiber*, 27.

timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, *to be afraid, fear*, 28.

timidus, -a, -um, adj., *timid, frightened* (timeō), 22.

timor, -ōris, m., *fear* (timeō), 17.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, *sublātus*, *to lift up, raise, destroy*, 41.

tormentum, -ī, n., *engine* (for throwing missiles), § 461.

tot, indeclin. adj., *so many*, 32.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, entire* (declined § 469), 20.

trā, = **trāns**.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -dītus (trāns + dō), *to hand over, yield up, surrender*, 33.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (trāns + dūcō), *to lead over, lead across*, 32.

trāiectus, -ūs, m., *a crossing over, passage*, § 461.

trāns, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *over, across*, 20.

trānseō, -īre, -īī, -itūrus (trāns + eō), *to go over, cross*, 47.

trānsportō, -āre (trāns + portō), *to carry across*, § 461.

tribūnus, -ī, m., *a tribune*, a military officer, six of whom were attached to each legion, 26.

trīgintā, indeclin. num., *thirty*, § 461.

tristis, -e, adj., *sad*, 22.

tū, tuī, second pers. pron., *thou, you* (declined § 474), 40.

Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia*, 1.

tum, adv., *then*, 29.

turma, -ae, f., *troop, squadron of cavalry*, § 461.

turris, -is, f., *tower*, 18.

tūtō, adv., *safely* (tātus), 25.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe*, 22.

tuus, -a, -um, pass. pron., *thy, your* (tū), 3.

U

ubi, rel. adv., *where, when*; **ubi primum**, *as soon as*, 3.

ullus, -a, -um, adj., *any* (declined § 469), 52.

ulterior, -ius, comparative adj., positive wanting, *farther, beyond* (compared § 471; **ultrā**), 24.

ultimus, -a, -um, superlative of **ulterior**, *farthest, most remote* (compared § 471), 24.

ultrā, adv. and prep. w. accu., *beyond, on the farther side*, 54.

ultrō, adv., *to the farther side, voluntarily*, § 461.

unā, adv., *along with, in company with*, 54.

unde, rel. adv., *whence, from which*, 52.

undique, adv., *from every side, everywhere*, 43.

universus, -a, -um, adj., *all together, all*, § 461.

umquam, adv., *ever, with a negative*, 37.

ūnus, -a, -um, adj., *one, sole, alone* (declined § 469), 32.

urbs, **urbis**, f., *city*, 19.

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, experience, profit* (**ūtor**), 50.

ut (**utī**), conj., *that, in order that, so that*; after expression of fear, *that not*, 30.

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, interrog. and rel. pron., *which (of two)?* (declined § 469), 33.

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, pron., *each (of two), both* (**uter**), 50.

utī, = **ut**.

utinam, adv., used to introduce wishes, 29.

ūtor, **ūtī**, **ūsus**, dep. v., *to use, enjoy, profit by*; used with an abl. of means instead of direct object, 37.

utrimque, adv., *on both sides, from both sides*, 55.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty of, without*, 24.

vadum, -ī, n., *a ford*; plur., *shoals*, § 461.

valeō, -ēre, **valui**, —, *to be strong*, 52.

validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong*, 6.

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *Varro*, 37.

vāsto, -āre, *to destroy, devastate*, 11.

vehementer, adv., *violently, impetuously*, 36.

vel, conj. and adv., *or*; **vel . . . vel**, *either, or (as you please)*; as adv., *even*, 56.

vēlōciter, adv., *swiftly* (**vēlōx**), 43.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, quick*, 21.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Veneti*, a tribe in northwestern Gaul, § 461.

veniō, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, *to come*, 34.

ventitō, -āre, *to come often, keep coming, come and go*, § 461.

ventus, -ī, m., *wind*, 27.

- vēr, vēris, n.,** *spring*; **prīmō vēre, at the beginning of spring,** 24.
- vereor, -ēri, veritus, dep. v.,** *to fear, dread,* 36.
- vergō, -ere, —, —, to slope, look towards,** § 461.
- vērō, adv., in truth, certainly,** § 461.
- Vertiscus, -ī, m., Vertiscus, a chief of the Remi,** 17.
- vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, to turn,** § 461.
- Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta, a Roman goddess,** 4.
- vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., your (vōs),** 16.
- via, -ae, f., road, way,** 1.
- vīctor, -ōris, m., victor (vincō),** 17.
- vīctōria, -ae, f., victory (vincō)** 10.
- videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus, to see; pass., to seem,** 27.
- vigilia, -ae, f., watch, guard,** 20.
- vīgintī, indeclin. num., twenty,** 23.
- vilicus, -ī, m., steward,** 4.
- vīlla, -ae, f., country house,** 4.
- vincō, -ere, vicī, vīctus, to conquer,** 35.
- vinculum, -ī, n., chain,** § 461.
- vir, virī, m., man,** 6.
- virtūs, -ūtis, f., manliness, courage, virtue (vir),** 16.
- vīs, vīs, f., force, violence; plur. vīrēs, -ium, strength, power,** § 461.
- vīta, -ae, f., life,** 3.
- vix, adv., hardly, scarcely,** 29.
- vocō, -āre, to call (vōx),** 7.
- volō, velle, voluī, to wish, will (conjugated § 487),** 44.
- voluntās, -ātis, f., wish, desire, consent (volō),** 45.
- Volusēnus, -ī, m., Volusenus, one of Caesar's military tribunes,** § 461.
- vōx, vōcis, f., voice,** 16.
- vulnerō, -āre, to wound (vulnus),** 15.
- vulnus, -eris, n., a wound,** 21.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

THE principal parts of verbs and peculiarities of syntax must be learned from the preceding vocabulary and the body of the book. The numbers after verbs indicate the conjugation to which they belong.

A

a, art., usually not translated ; sometimes quidam, quaedam, quoddam.

about, dē w. abl. ; circum w. accu.

abundance, cōpia, -ae, f.

acceptable, grātus, -a, -um.

accustomed (to be), solē, 2 (§ 295) ; **to grow accustomed**, cōnsuēscō, 3.

acquainted with (to become), cōgnōscō, 3.

across, trāns w. accu.

act (to), agō, 3 ; faciō, 3.

advance (to), signa movēre, prōgredior, 3.

advantage of (to take), ūtor, 3.

advice, cōsiliū, -ī, n.

affairs, rēs, rei, f.

afraid (to be), timeō, 2 ; vereor, 2.

after, prep., post w. accu. ; conj., postquam, ubi, cum ; sometimes abl. abs. ; adv., inde, deinde.

afterwards, postea, deinde.

again, iterum, rursus.

against, contrā w. accu.

agreed (to be), cōnstāre used impersonally.

aid, auxilium, -ī, n.

aid (to), iuvō, 1.

all, omnis, -e ; tōtus, -a, -um ; **all other**, cēteri, -ae, -a ; **all sides (on)**, undique.

allow (to), permittō, 3 ; pati-or, 3 ; licet used impersonally, 2.

ally, socius, -ī, m.

almost, fere, paene.

alone, solus, -a, -um.

already, iam.

also, quoque.

altar, āra, -ae, f.

although, cum w. subj. ; quamquam w. indic.

altogether, omninō.

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.

among, inter, apud w. accu.

ancestors, māiorēs, m. and f.

ancient, antiquus.

and, et, atque.

animal, animal, -ālis, n.

announce (to), nūntiō, 1.

another, alius, -a, -um.

any, ūllus, -a, -um ; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquid) ; quisquam, —, quidquam.

appearance of (to have the), = to be like.
approach, iter, itineris, n.; aditus, -ūs, m.; adventus, -ūs, m.
approach (to), adpropinquō, 1; adeō (§ 488).
approve (to), probō, 1.
arms, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
arouse (to), excitō, 1; incitō, 1.
arrest (to), comprehendō, 3.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrive (to), perveniō, 4.
as, = appositive; prō w. abl.; quam; quālis; **as long as,** dum (§ 370); **as soon as,** cum primum; simul atque (ac).
ask (to), rogō, 1; petō, 3; postulō, 1.
assemble (to), convocō, 1.
assembly, concilium, -i, n.
assist (to), iuvō, 1.
at once, statim.
attack (to), oppugnō, 1.
attack, impetus, -ūs; oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f.
attempt (to), conor, 1.
attendant, comes, -itis, m. and f.
auxiliary troops, auxilia, -ōrum, n. plur.
avail (to be of), prōsum w. dat. (§ 486).
await (to), exspectō, 1.
aware of (to be), sentiō, 4; sciō, 4.

B

bad, malus, -a, -um.
baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. plur.
band, manus, -ūs, f.
barbarian, barbarus, -a, -um.

battle, pūgna, -ae, f.; proelium, -i, n.
be (to), sum (§ 485).
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.
because, quod; cum; **because of,** = abl. of cause.
before, conj., antequam; prep., ante w. accu.
beg (to), rogō, 1; petō, 3.
beginning (at the b. of), = the proper case of primus, -a, -um.
behind, post w. accu.
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, m.
believe (to), putō, 1.
belong (to), = dat. of possessor or possessive gen.
below, infrā w. accu.
besiege (to), oppugnō, 1.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
betake one's self (to), sē recipere.
between, inter w. accu.
body, corpus, -oris, n.
bold, audāx.
boldness, audācia, -ae, f.
bondage, servitus, -ūtis, f.
book, liber, librī, m.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
boy, puer, puerī, m.
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, f.
break camp (to), castra movēre.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bring (to), portō, 1; ferō (§ 489); inferō; **bring together,** cōgō, 3; **bring upon,** inferō.
Briton, Britannus, -i, m.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, m.

build, aedificō, 1.
but, sed.

C

call (to), appellō, 1; vocō, 1;
call together, convocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.
camp (to pitch), castra ponere.
can, be able (to), possum (§ 486).
capture (to), expugnō, 1.
care for (to), cūrō, 1; cōsulō w.
 dat., 3.

carry (to), portō, 1; **carry on**
war, bellum gerere; **carry out**
of, dēferre.

Carthaginians, Carthāginiēnsēs,
 -ium, m. plur.

cavalry, equites, -um, m. plur.;
 equitātus, -ūs, m.; adj., eques-
 ter, -tris, -tre.

centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, m.

challenge (to), laccssō, 3.

chance, potestās, -ātis, f.; **chances**,
 cāsus, ūs, m.

charge of (to be in), praesum w.
 dat.; **to put in c. of**, praeficiō
 w. dat., 3.

chase away (to), fugō, 1.

chief, princeps, -ipis, m.

children, liberī, -ōrum, m. plur.

citadel, arx, arcis, f.

citizenship, civitās, -ātis, f.

city, urbs, urbis, f.; oppidum,
 -ī, n.

client, cliēns, clientis, m.

cloud, nūbēs, -is, f.

cohort, cohors, -tis, f.

come (to), veniō, 4; **come near**,
 adpropinquō, 1; **come up**, suc-
 cēdō, 3.

command, imperium, -ī, n.

companion, comes, -itis, m. and f.

compel (to), cōgō, 3.

complain (to), queror, 3.

conceal (to), occultō, 1.

condition, condiciō, -ōnis, f.

confident (to be), cōnfidō (§ 305).

conquer (to), superō, 1; vincō, 3.

consecutive, continuus, -a, -um.

conspire (to), coniūrō, 1.

consul, cōsul, -lis, m.

contend in battle (to), dēcertō, 1.

country, patria, -ae, f.; finēs,
 -ium, m. plur.

country-house, villa, -ae, f.

courage, animus, -ī, m.; virtus,
 -ūtis, f.; fortitūdō, -inis, f.

cover (to), compleō, 2.

cut down (to), occidō, 3.

D

danger, periculum, -ī, n.

dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um.

daughter, filia, -ae, f.

dawn, lūx, lūcis, f.

day, diēs, diēi, m.

daybreak (at), primā lūce.

daylight, lūx, lūcis, f.

dear, cārus, -a, -um.

death, mors, mortis, f.

decide (to), cōstituō, 3.

defeat (to), superō, 1; vincō, 3.

defend (to), dēfendō, 3.

delay (to), moror, 1.

delay, mora, -ae, f.

deliver a speech (to), orātiōnem
 habēre.

demand (to), postulō, 1.

departure, profectiō, -ōnis, f.;
 discessus, -ūs, m.

deprive (to), privō, 1.

design of (with the), = a pur-
 pose clause.

desire (to), cupiō, 3; volō (§ 487).
desist from (to), desistō, 3; intermittō, 3.
despair (to), dēspērō, 1.
destroy (to), tollō, 3.
deter (to), dēterreō, 2.
determine (to), cōstituō, 3.
devastate (to), vastō, 1.
die (to), morior, 3.
different, dissimilis, -e.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, f.
diligence, industria, -ae, f.; diligentia, -ae, f.
diligently, cum industriā; diligenter.
disaster, clādēs, -is, f.
dislodge, pellō, 3.
dispatch (to), mittō, 3.
disperse (to), abeō.
distant (to be), absum.
district, ager, agrī, m.; regiō, -ōnis, f.
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
doubt (to), dubitō, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um; **there is no doubt**, nōn est dubium.
draw up (to), cōstituō, 3.
drive (to), fugō, 1; agō, 3; pellō, 3; **drive away, out, from**, fugō, 1; expellō, 3.
during, accu. or abl. of time; in; per.
dwell (to), incolō, 3.

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (§ 478);
each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque (§ 469).
eager, avidus, -a, -um; ācer, ācris, ācre.

eager for (to be), studeō, 2; cupiō, 3.
early (in the morning), māne.
easy, facilis, -e.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
embassy, legatiō, -ōnis, f.
employ (to), ūtor, 3.
end, finis, -is, m.
endure (to), patior, 3; ferō (§ 489).
enemy, inimicus, -i, m.; hostis, -is, m.
engage with (to), pūgnō 1, proelium committere.
England, Britannia, -ae, f.
enjoy (to), fruor, 3.
enlarge (to), augeō, 2.
enough, satis.
enter (to), intrō, 1; **enter upon**, ineō, incipiō, 3.
entire, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 469).
equal, aequus, -a, -um; similis, -e.
erect (to), aedificō, 1.
especially, praesertim.
establish (to), cōfirmō, 1.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.
even if, etiam si.
exchange (to), dāre et accipere.
exhausted, dēfessus, -a, -um.
experience (to), experior, 4; patior, 3.
experienced, peritus, -a, -um.

F

fact, rēs, rei, f.; often simply the neuter of hīc.
fail (to), dēficiō, 3; dēsum.
fall (to), accidō, 3; pass. of iaciō, 3; **fall back**, pedem referre; cēdō, 3; revertor, 3.
fame, fāma, -ae, f.
famous, clārus, -a, -um; sometimes ille.

far, procul, longē.
far away (to be), absum.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
farther, adj., ulterior, -ius; adv.,
 ultrā.
father, pater, patris, m.
fear (to), timeō, 2; vereor, 2.
fear, timor, -ōris, m.
fear that (for), nē.
fearlessly, sine timōre.
feel grateful (to), grātiām ha-
 bēre.
few, nōnnūllī, -ae, -a; paucī,
 -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, m.; campus, -i,
 m.
fiercely, ātrōciter.
fifth, quintus, -a, -um.
fight (to), pūgnō, 1.
fill up (to), compleō, 2.
finally, denique.
find (to), nanciscor, 3.
find out (to), cōgnōscō, 3.
fine, bonus, -a, -um; pulcher,
 -chra, -chrum.
finish (to), cōnficiō, 3.
fire, ignis, -is, m.
first, adj., primus, -a, -um; **first**
of all, adv., primum; **at first**,
 primō.
five, quinque.
flank, latus, -eris, n.; cornu,
 -ūs, n.
flee (to), fugiō, 3.
fleet, classis, -is, f.
flock, grex, gregis, m.
foe, hostis, -is, m.
follow (to), sequor, 3.
following, proximus, -a, -um;
 secundus, -a, -um; hīc, haec,
 hōc.
foot, pes, pedis, m.; **foot-sol-**

diers, peditēs, -um, m. pl.;
 peditātūs, -ūs, m.
foot of, infimus, -a, -um; **to the**
foot of, sub w. accu.
for, nam; enim; quod.
for the sake of, prō w. abl.;
 causā w. gen.
force (with great), graviter.
forced marches, māgna itinera.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f.
foresight, cōnsilium, -i, n.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forget (to), obliviscor, 3.
former (the), ille, illa, illud;
 prior, prius.
formerly, olim.
fortification, mūnitiō, ōnis, f.
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
free (to), liberō, 1.
free, liber, -era, -erum.
freedom, libertās, -ātis, f.
fresh, novus, -a, -um; integer,
 -gra, -grum.
friend, amicus, -i, m.
friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.
frighten (to), terreō, 2.
from, ā, ab; dē; ē, ex.

G

Gallie, Gallus, -a, -um; Gallicus,
 -a, um.
garden, hortus, -i, m.
garrison, praesidium, -i, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather (to), conveniō, 4.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gauls, Galli, -ōrum, m.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.;
 dux, ducis, m.
German, Germānus, -a, -um.
Germany, Germania, -ae, f.

get ready (to), parō, 1; aedificō, 1;
gift, donum, -ī, n.
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give (to), dō, 1; **give an opinion**,
 sententiam dicere.
give up (to), reddō, 8; trādō, 8;
 desistō, 3.
gladly, laetē.
glory, laus, laudis, f.
go (to), eō (§ 488); exeō; profi-
 ciscor, 8; **go against, to meet**,
 occurrō, 3.
goddess, dea, -ae, f.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
goods, bona, -ōrum, n. plur.
gradually, paulātim.
grain, frumentum, -ī, n.
grant (to), dō, 1.
grass, herba, -ae, f.
great, magnus, -a, -um; clārus,
 -a, -um.
greatly, māgnoperē; vehementer.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
ground, terra, -ae, f.
guard, custōs, -ōdis, m.

H

Haeduanus, Haedui, -ōrum, m.
 plur.
halt (to), cōsistō, 3.
hand, manus, -ūs, f.
hand over (to), trādō, 3.
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
happen (to), fiō (§ 488).
happy, beātus, -a, -um.
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um; gravis, -e;
 atrōx.
hardly, vix; fere.
haste, celeritās, -ātis, f.
hasten (to), properō, 1.

hatred, odium, -ī, n.
have (to), habeo, 2.
height, altitūdō, -inis, f.
help, auxilium, -ī, n.
here, hic.
hide (to), occultō, 1.
hill, collis, -is, m.
hinder (to), prohibeo, 2; impe-
 diō, 4.
hither, adj., citerior, -ius.
hold (to), habeo, 2.
home, domus, -ūs, m.
honor, laus, laudis, f.
hope, spēs, spei, f.
Horace, Horatius, -ī, m.
horn, cornū, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
horseman, eques, -itis, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, m.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, domus, -ūs, m.
how many, quot.
hurry (to), properō, 1; contem-
 dō, 3.

I

I, egō (§ 474).
immediately, statim.
in, in w. abl.
inasmuch as, cum w. subj.; quod.
increase (to), augeō, 2.
induce (to), adducō, 3.
influence, auctoritās, -ātis, f.
inform (to), nūntiō, 1; aliquem
 certiōrem facere.
inhabit (to), incolō, 3.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, m.; in-
 habitant of a town, oppidā-
 nus.
injure (to), noceō, 2.
injury, iniūria, -ae, f.
inner, interior, -ius.

in order that, ut.
in regard to, dē w. abl.
intend (to), in animō habēre;
 volō.
interior, interior, -ius.
into, in w. accu.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.

J

javelin, pilum, -i, n.
judge, iūdex, -icis, m.

K

keeper, custōs, -ōdis, m.
keep from (to), prohibeō, 2.
keep in check (to), contineō, 2.
kill (to), necō, 1; interficio, 3;
 occidō, 3.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
know (to), sciō, 4; cōgnōvī, 3;
 intellegō, 3; **know how**, sciō
 w. inf.

L

labor, labor, -ōris, m.
lack, inopia, -ae, f.
lacking (to be), dēsum.
land, terra, -ae, f.; ager, agrī, m.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
latter, hīc, haec, hōc.
lay waste (to), vastō, 1.
lead (to), dūcō, 3; **lead across**,
 trādūcō, 3; **lead forth**, prō-
 dūcō, 3; **lead off**, dēdūcō, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leading man, princeps, -ipis, m.
learn (to), audiō, 4; cōgnōscō, 3;
 certior fieri.
leave (to), relinqūō, 3.
left, reliquus, -a, -um; **on the**
left hand, sinister, -tra, -trum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.

letter, epistula, -ae, f.; litterae,
 -ārum, f. plur.
level, aequus, -a, -um.
liberate (to), liberō, 1.
liberty, libertās, -ātis, f.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.
life, vita, -ae, f.; salūs, -ūtis, f.
light, levis, -e.
like (to), amō, 1.
like, similis, -e.
line-of-battle, acies, -eī, f.
little, parvus, -a, -um; **a little**,
 paulum; paulō; **a little after**,
 paulō post.
live (to), habitō, 1.
long, adj., longus, -a, -um.
long, for a long time, adv., diū.
look out for one's interests (to),
 alicui cōsultare.
lose (to), amittō, 3.
loud, māgnus, -a, -um.
love (to), amō, 1.
love, amor, -ōris, m.
low, humilis, -e.

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, m.
maid-servant, ancilla, -ae, f.
make (to), faciō, 3; efficiō, 3;
make an effort, conor, 1; ope-
 ram dāre; **make peace**, pācem
 cōfirmāre; **make war**, bellum
 inferre, agere.
man, vir, virī, m.; homō, -inis, m.
manage (to), administrō, 1; agō,
 3; faciō, 3.
manner, modus, -ī, m.; ratiō,
 -ōnis, f.; **in what manner**,
 quō modō.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march (to), iter facere; **march**
out, exeō.

march, iter, itineris, n.
master, dominus, -i, m.; magister, -tri, m.
meantime (in the), interim; intereā.
meet (to go to), occurrō, 3.
meet death (to), morior, 3; pass. of neco, 1; interficiō, 3; occidō, 3.
messenger, nūntius, -i, m.
method, ratiō, -ōnis, f.
midnight, media nox.
mile, mille passūs.
military matters, rēs militāris.
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.; argentum, -i, n.
mother, māter, -tris, f.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
much, adv., multō.
muse, mūsa, -ae, f.
my, mine, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, n.
nation, natiō, -ōnis, f.
naturally, abl. nātūrā.
near, prope w. accu.; nearer, propior, -ius; nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
nearily, ferē; paene.
needful, necessārius, -a, -um.
neighbors, finitimī, -ōrum, m. plur.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
neither, pron., neuter, -tra, -trum (§ 469).
Nervians, Nervii, -ōrum, m. plur.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus, -a, -um; posterus, -a, -um.

night, nox, noctis, f.; **by night**, noctū.
nobility of spirit, māgnitūdō animī.
no longer, nōn diūtius.
not, nōn, neque; **not only . . . but also**, nōn modo . . . sed etiam; **not yet**, nondum.
nothing, nihil.
notice, sentiō, 4.
now, nunc, iam.
number, numerus, -i, m.

O

obliged (to be), often expressed by the pass. periphras. conjugation.
ocean, oceanus, -i, m.
offer, dō, 1; offerō, 3.
often, saepe.
old man, senex, senis, m.
on, in w. abl.; **on account of**, abl.
once, ōlim; **at once**, statim.
one . . . another, alius . . . alius.
on land and sea, terrā marique.
onrush, impetus, -ūs, m.
openly, palam.
opinion, sententia, -ae, f.
opportunity, facultās, -atis, f.; potestās, -ātis, f.
opposite, adversus, -a, -um.
oppress, premō, 3; opprimō, 3.
order (to), imperō, 1; iubeō, 2;
order to furnish, imperō w. dat. of person and accu. of thing.
other, alius, alia, aliud (§ 469); **other of two**, alter, -tera, -terum (§ 469).

others (the), cēteri, -ae, -a; reliquī, -ae, -a.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
overcome (to), superō, 1; vincō, 3.
overtake (to), cōsequor, 3.
owe, ought (to), debeō, 2.
owing (to), abl. of cause.
own (one's), suus, -a, -um.
owner, dominus, -i, m.

P

pacify (to), pācō, 1.
part, pars, partis, f.; **for the most part**, plerumque.
pass (to let), intermittō, 3.
pass the winter (to), hiemō, 1.
patriotism, amor patriae.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, -i, m.
perpetual, perpetuus, -a, -um.
Persian, Persa, -ae, m.
persuade (to), persuādeō, 2.
pitch camp (to), castra pōnere.
place (to), conlocō, 1.
place, locus, -i, m.; **to the same place**, eōdem.
plain, campus, -i, m.
plan, cōsiliū, -i, n.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pledge, fidēs, -ei, f.
plunder, praeda, -ae, f.
poet, poēta, -ae, m.
Pompey, Pompēius, -i, m.
position, locus, -i, m.
possession of (to get), potior, 4; occupō, 1.
possessions, rēs, rērum, f. plur.; bona, n. plur.
power, imperium, -i, n.; potestās, -ātis, f.
praise (to), laudō, 1.

prefer (to), mālō (§ 487).
prepare (to), parō, 1; comparō, 1.
present (to be), adsum.
prevent (to), prohibeō, 2; impediō, 4.
previous, prior, prius.
priest, sacerdos, -ōtis, m.
principal man, princeps, -ipis, m.
prisoner, captivus, -i, m.
proceed (to), prōgredior, 3; **to begin**, instituō, 3.
promise (to), polliceor, 2.
protect (to), muniō, 4.
protection, praesidium, -i, n.
provision (to make), subsidia parāre; provideō, 2.
provoke (to), lacerō, 3.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.
purpose (to no), frūstrā.
pursue (to), sequor, 3.
put in command (to), praeficiō, 3.
put to flight (to), fugō, 1.

Q

quantity, cōpia, -ae, f.; multus, -a, -um.
queen, regīna, -ae, f.
quickly, celeriter.
quiet, quīēs, -ētis, f.

R

rain, aqua dē caelō.
rather than, potius quam.
reach (to), perveniō, 4.
read (to), legō, 3.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
ready (to get), parō, 1.
reason, causa, -ae, f.
recall (to), revocō, 1.
receive (to), accipiō, 3.

recognise (to), cōgnōscō, 3.
regard to (with), dē w. abl.
region, regiō, -ōnis, f.
relieve (to), succēdō, 3.
remain (to), manēō, 2.
remember (to), in memoriā tenēre, habēre.
remove (to), tollō, 3.
reply (to), respondeō, 2.
report (to), nūntiō, renūntiō, 1.
reputation, fāma, -ae, f.
rest (the), cēteri, -ae, -a; reliqui, -ae, -a.
retreat (to), dēcēdō, 3; pedem referre.
return (to), reddō, 3; = come back, revertor, 3; redeō.
revolution, novae rēs, f. plur.
reward, praemium, -i, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -i, m.
ridge, iugum, -i, n.
right, iūs, iūris, n.
right hand (on the), dexter, -tra, -trum.
rise (to), orior, 4.
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.; by the shortest road, quā proximum iter est.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
rose, rōsa, -ae, f.
royal power, rēgnum, -i, n.
rule (as a), plērumque.
run together (to), concurrō, 3;
run away, fugiō, 3.

S

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.
sad, tristis, -e.
safety (in), incolumis, -e.
sail (to), nāvigiō, 1.

sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake of (for the), causā w. gen.
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.
same, idem, eadem, idem (§ 475).
savage, atrōx.
save (to), servō, 1.
say (to), dicō, 3; **said he**, inquit.
scarcity, inopia, -ae, f.
sea, mare, maris, n.
secretly, clam.
see (to), videō, 2.
seek (to), petō, 3; **quaerō**, 3.
seem (to), videor, 2.
seize (to), occupō, 1.
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
send (to), mittō, 3; **send forward**, praemittō, 3.
set fire to (to), incendō, 3.
set forth (to), proficiscor, 3.
set free (to), liberō, 1.
set to work (to), incipiō, 3; coepi.
set out (to), proficiscor, 3.
seven, septem.
several, singuli, -ae, -a; nōnnūlli, -ae, -a.
severe, gravis, -e.
severely, graviter.
shield, scūtum, -i, n.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
short, brevis, -e; **in a short time**, celeriter; **by the shortest road**, quā proximum iter est.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
show (to), dēmōnstrō, 1; ostendō, 3.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
side, latus, -eris, n.; **on all sides**, undique.
signal, signum, -i, n.

silence, silentium, -i, n.; **in silence**, silentiō.
since, cum; quod.
slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.
slave, servus, -i, m.
slay (to), occidō, 3; interficiō, 3.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, tam, ita; = **therefore**, itaque;
so many, tot; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, miles, -itis, m.
some (one), aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod); quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam); **some . . . others**; alii . . . alii.
son, filius, -i, m.
soon, mox.
sort, modus, -i, m.; **of this sort**, tālis, -e; eiusmodi.
Spaniards, Hispāni, -ōrum, m. plur.
spear, hasta, -ae, f.
speech, orātiō, -ōnis, f.; **to make a speech**, orātiōnem habere.
speed, celeritās, -ātis, f.
spirit, animus, -i, m.
spirited, ācer, ācris, ācre.
spring (at the beginning of), primō vere.
state, civitās, -ātis, f.
station (to), conlocō, 1; cōnstituō, 3.
stay (to), maneō, 3.
steward, vilicus, -i, m.
still, sed, tamen.
stir up (to), incitō, 1; excitō, 1.
stop (to), intermittō, 3.
storm (to), oppugnō, 1.
storming, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f.
story, fābula, -ae, f.
strange, novus, -a, -um.
strengthen (to), cōfirmō, 1.

strong, validus, -a, -um; **to be strong**, valeō, 2.
subdue (to), pācō, 1; superō, 1; vincō, 3.
succeed (to), efficere ut.
successfully, fēliciter.
such, tālis, -e; is, ea, id.
suddenly, subitō, imprōvisō.
sue for (to), petō, 3.
suitable, suited, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, f.
sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
superior (to be), praecedō, 3.
supply, cōpia, -ae, f.; **supplies**, cōpia; frūmentum, -i, n.
support, subsidium, -i, n.
surrender, sē dēdere.
surround (to), circumveniō, 4; circumdō, 3.
suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, f.
sustain (to), sustineō, 2.
swift, vēlōx.
swiftly, celeriter.
sword, gladius, -i, m.

T

take by storm (to), expugnō, 1.
take place (to), fiō (§ 488).
take possession of (to), occupō, 1.
teacher, magister, -tri, m.
tell (to), narrō, 1; dicō, 3.
temple, templum, -i, n.
ten, decem.
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
terrify (to), terreō, 2.
territory, finēs, -ium, m. plur.
than, quam; abl. case.
thank (to), grātiās agere.
that, in purpose or result clauses, ut; after verbs of fearing, nē;

after verbs of doubting, etc.,
quā; **that not**, nē, ut nōn;
after verbs of fearing, ut.
that (one), ille, illa, illud; is, ea,
id (§ 475); **that (of yours)**, iste,
ista, istud (§ 475).
their, gen. plur. of is; reflexive
suus, -a, -um.
then, deinde; inde; tum.
there, ibi.
therefore, itaque.
think (to), putō, 1.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirty, trigintā.
this, hic, haec, hōc (§ 475).
though, cum w. subj.; quam-
quam.
thousand, mille.
three, trēs, tria.
throughout, per w. accu.
thus, ita, sic, hōc modō.
time, tempus, -oris, n.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, dat. case; ad, in w. accu.; ex-
pressing purpose, ut w. subj.,
ad w. gerundive, causā w. gen.
of gerund or gerundive, supine.
today, hodiē.
together with, cum w. abl.;
ūnā cum w. abl.
top of, summus, -a, -um.
toward, ad w. accu.
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -i, n.; urbs, ur-
bis f.
townsman, oppidānus, -i, m.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.
tree, arbor, -oris, f.
tribe, gēns, gentis, f.
tribune, tribūnus, -i, m.
trust (to), cōfidō, 3.
try (to), conor, 1.

turn one's back (to), terga ver-
tere, dare.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, viginti.
twenty-five, quinque et viginti.
two, duo, duae, duo (§ 473);
which of two, uter, utra,
utrum (§ 469); **each of two**.
uterque, utraque, utrumque.

U

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
undergo (to), sustineō, 2.
undeserved, indignus, -a, -um.
unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.
unharmed, incolumis, -e.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
until, dum.
unwilling (to be), nōlō (§ 487).
use, ūsus, -ūs, m.
used to, etc., imperfect tense;
soleō, 2.
useful, predicate dat. of ūsus.

V

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.; fortitūdō,
-inis, f.
very, = superlative degree; ipse,
ipsa, ipsum (§ 475).
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
voice, vox, vocis, f.

W

wait for (to), expectō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -i, m.; moenia,
-ium, n. plur.
wander (to), errō, 1.
war, warfare, bellum, -i, n.
watch, vigilia, -ae, f.

way, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.
well, bene.
what? quid.
when, ubi; cum.
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
which (of two), uter, utra, utrum (§ 469).
while, dum.
who, which, what, rel., qui, quae, quod (§ 476); interrog., quis, quid (§ 477).
whosoever, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, coniūnx, -iugis, f.
will, voluntās, -ātis, f.; **against one's will**, contrā voluntātem; invitus, -a, -um.
wind, ventus, -ī, m.
wing, cornū, -ūs, n.
winter, hiems, hiemis, f.
winter-quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, n. plur.
wisely, sapienter.
wish, volō (§ 487); cupiō, 3.
with, cum w. abl.

withdraw (to), cēdō, 3; discēdō, 3; pedem referre.
within, in w. abl.; of time, abl. case.
without, sine w. abl.
withstand, sustineō, 2.
wolf, lupus, -ī, m.; **she-wolf**, lupa, -ae, f.
woman, mulier, -eris, f.
wood, silva, -ae, f.
word, verbum, -ī, n.
work (to), labōrō, 1; faciō, 3.
work, opus, operis, n.
would that, = optative subj. with or without utinam (§ 242).
wound (to), vulnerō, 1; **wounded**, vulnerātus, -a, -um.
wrong, iniūria, -ae, f.

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.
you, tū; plur. vōs (§ 474).
young man, iuvenis, -is, m.; adulescēns, -entis, m.
your, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.
youth, iuvenis, -is, m.

(1)

THE END

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES

*A New Series of Latin and Greek Texts for
Secondary Schools, under the editorial charge of*

John Henry Wright, A. M., LL. D., Harvard University

Bernadotte Perrin, Ph.D., LL.D., Yale University

Andrew Fleming West, Ph.D., LL.D., Princeton University

These names guarantee the highest standard of scholarship and pedagogic fitness.

The whole series throughout is based on the lines laid down in the Report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association to the National Educational Association.

These lines are now universally accepted as defining the ideal classical course for secondary schools. The Twentieth Century Classical Texts satisfy at every point this universal requirement.

The methods of teaching Latin and Greek as revised and now adopted by American educators call for a less pedantic, more humanistic style, dominantly literary in spirit, giving a clear, forceful impression of ancient life and thought. The modern secondary text-book is not merely grammatical, but also historical; fitted to arouse living enthusiasm for the great masterpieces of ancient thought and for their exquisite literary dress.

All this, recently focused in the action of the National Educational Association, is now embodied for the first time in this Series, edited by representative scholars of the universities that have had most to do with classical culture in America.

The general editors and their colleagues are all practical teachers, originators, and leaders in the courses now pursued in our secondary-school system.

Hence, the **Twentieth Century Classical Series** offers the simplest, most practical, and up-to-date Latin and Greek books ever prepared for American schools.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

A School Grammar of Attic Greek.

By THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL, Ph. D., Professor of Greek in Yale University. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

This is the only Greek Grammar that contains the modern knowledge of the subject, and sets forth the modern methods of teaching it.

Goodell's Greek Grammar does this thoroughly, accurately, and simply. It is written by a distinguished Greek scholar—a successor of Woolsey, Hadley, and Packard—who has had years of experience in secondary schools and is to-day in closest touch with them.

Intended primarily for such schools, this book is made as plain as possible. Rarer forms and principles of syntax, such as are naturally explained in lexicon or notes, are here omitted; classification and terminology have been much simplified.

Yet this Grammar supplies all that is needed for reading the drama and Attic prose commonly studied in freshman and sophomore years.

Sentences are classified by form instead of by function. In like manner, subordinate clauses are classified first by the introductory word, then by mode and tense. Not only is this better scientifically, but the result is a more concrete and intelligible system for young students.

Larger and plainer type is used, especially for the Greek, than in any other Greek Grammar. Of this larger print the book contains about three hundred pages.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

YB 36254

562490

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

